Babel

The standard distribution of LaTeX contains a number of document classes that are meant to be used, but also serve as examples for other users to create their own document classes. These document classes have become very popular among LaTeX users. But it should be kept in mind that they were designed for American tastes and typography. At one time they even contained a number of hard-wired texts.

This manual describes babel, a package that makes use of the capabilities of TeX version 3 and, to some extent, xetex and luatex, to provide an environment in which documents can be typeset in a language other than US English, or in more than one language or script.

However, no attempt has been done to take full advantage of the features provided by the latter, which would require a completely new core (as for example `polyglossia` or as part of LaTeX3).

Contents

Part I

User guide

1   The user interface

The basic user interface of this package is quite simple. It consists of a set of commands that switch from one language to another, and a set of commands that deal with shorthands. It is also possible to find out what the current language is. In most cases, a single language is required, and then all you need in LaTeX is to load the package using its standand mechanism for this purpose, namely, passing that language as an optional argument.

In multilingual documents, just use several option. So, in LaTeX2e the preamble of the document:

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage[dutch,english]{babel}
```

would tell LaTeX that the document would be written in two languages, Dutch and English, and that English would be the first language in use, and the main one. You can also set the main language explicitly:

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage[main=english,dutch]{babel}
```

Another approach is making dutch and english global options in order to let other packages detect and use them:

```
\documentclass[dutch,english]{article}
\usepackage{babel}
\usepackage{varioref}
```

In this last example, the package `varioref` will also see the options and will be able to use them.

Languages may be set as global and as package option at the same time, but in such a case you should set explicitly the main language with the package option `main`:

```
\documentclass[italian]{book}
\usepackage[ngerman,main=italian]{babel}
```

New 3.9c   The basic behaviour of some languages can be modified when loading babel by means of *modifiers*. They are set after the language name, and are prefixed with a dot (only when the language is set as package option – neither global options nor the `main` key accept them). An example is (spaces are not significant and they can be added or removed):[1]

```
\usepackage[latin.medieval, spanish.notilde.lcroman, danish]{babel}
```

Attributes (described below) are considered modifiers, ie, you can set an attribute by including it in the list of modifiers. However, modifiers is a more general mechanism.

---

[1]No predefined "axis" for modifiers are provided because languages and their scripts have quite different needs.

4

Because of the way babel has evolved, "language" can refer to (1) a set of hyphenation patterns as preloaded into the format, (2) a package option, (3) an ldf file, and (4) a name used in the document to select a language or dialect. So, a package option refers to a language in a generic way – sometimes it is the actual language name used to select it, sometimes it is a file name loading a language with a different name, sometimes it is a file name loading several languages. Please, read the documentation for specific languages for further info.

Loading directly sty files in LaTeX (ie, \usepackage{⟨*language*⟩}) is deprecated and you will get the error:[2]

```
! Package babel Error: You are loading directly a language style.
(babel)                This syntax is deprecated and you must use
(babel)                \usepackage[language]{babel}.
```

Another typical error when using babel is the following:[3]

```
! Package babel Error: Unknown language 'LANG'. Either you have misspelled
(babel)                its name, it has not been installed, or you requested
(babel)                it in a previous run. Fix its name, install it or just
(babel)                rerun the file, respectively
```

The most frequent reason is, by far, the latest (for example, you included spanish, but you realized this language is not used after all, and therefore you removed it from the option list). In most cases, the error vanishes when the document is typeset again, but in more severe ones you will need to remove the aux file.

In Plain, load languages styles with \input and then use \begindocument (the latter is defined by babel):

```
\input estonian.sty
\begindocument
```

Note not all languages provide a sty file and some of them are not compatible with Plain.[4]

1.1 Selecting languages

This section describes the commands to be used in the document to switch the language in multilingual document.

The main language is selected automatically when the document environment begins. In the preamble it has *not* been selected, except hyphenation patterns and the name assigned to \languagename (in particular, shorthands, captions and date are not activated). If you need to define boxes and the like in the preamble, you might want to use some of the following commands.

\selectlanguage   {⟨*language*⟩}

When a user wants to switch from one language to another he can do so using the macro \selectlanguage. This macro takes the language, defined previously by a language definition file, as its argument. It calls several macros that should be defined in the language definition files to activate the special definitions for the language chosen. For "historical reasons", a macro name is converted to a

---

[2]In former versions the error read "You have used an old interface to call babel", not very helpful.

[3]In former versions the error read "You haven't loaded the language LANG yet".

[4]Even in the babel kernel there were some macros not compatible with plain. Hopefully these issues will be fixed soon.

language name without the leading \; in other words, the two following declarations are equivalent:

```
\selectlanguage{german}
\selectlanguage{\german}
```

Using a macro instead of a "real" name is deprecated.
If used inside braces there might be some non-local changes, as this would be roughly equivalent to:

```
{\selectlanguage{<inner-language>} ...}\selectlanguage{<outer-language>}
```

If you want a change which is really local, you must enclose this code with an additional grouping level.
This command can be used as environment, too.

\begin{otherlanguage} {⟨*language*⟩} ... \end{otherlanguage}

The environment otherlanguage does basically the same as \selectlanguage, except the language change is (mostly) local to the environment.
Actually, there might be some non-local changes, as this environment is roughly equivalent to:

```
\begingroup
\selectlanguage{<inner-language>}
...
\endgroup
\selectlanguage{<outer-language>}
```

If you want a change which is really local, you must enclose this environment with an additional grouping, like braces {}.
Spaces after the environment are ignored.

\foreignlanguage {⟨*language*⟩}{⟨*text*⟩}

The command \foreignlanguage takes two arguments; the second argument is a phrase to be typeset according to the rules of the language named in its first argument. This command (1) only switches the extra definitions and the hyphenation rules for the language, *not* the names and dates, (2) does not send information about the language to auxiliary files (i.e., the surrounding language is still in force), and (3) it works even if the language has not been set as package option (but in such a case it only sets the hyphenation patterns and a warning is shown).

\begin{otherlanguage*} {⟨*language*⟩} ... \end{otherlanguage*}

Same as \foreignlanguage but as environment. Spaces after the environment are *not* ignored.
This environment (or in some cases otherlanguage) may be required for intermixing left-to-right typesetting with right-to-left typesetting in engines not supporting a change in the writing direction inside a line.

\begin{hyphenrules} {⟨*language*⟩} ... \end{hyphenrules}

The environment hyphenrules can be used to select *only* the hyphenation rules to be used (it can be used as command, too). This can for instance be used to select

'nohyphenation', provided that in `language.dat` the 'language' nohyphenation is defined by loading `zerohyph.tex`. It deactivates language shorthands, too (but not user shorthands).

Except for these simple uses, `hyphenrules` is discouraged and `otherlanguage*` (the starred version) is preferred, as the former does not take into account possible changes in encodings or characters like, say, ' done by some languages (eg, italian, frenchb, ukraineb). To set hyphenation exceptions, use `\babelhyphenation` (see below).

1.2 More on selection

`\babeltags` {⟨*tag1*⟩ = ⟨*language1*⟩, ⟨*tag2*⟩ = ⟨*language2*⟩, . . . }

New 3.9i In multilingual documents with many language switches the commands above can be cumbersome. With this tool shorter names can be defined. It adds nothing really new – it is just syntactical sugar.

It defines `\text`⟨*tag1*⟩{⟨*text*⟩} to be `\foreignlanguage`{⟨*language1*⟩}{⟨*text*⟩}, and `\begin`{⟨*tag1*⟩} to be `\begin`{otherlanguage*}{⟨*language1*⟩}, and so on. Note `\`⟨*tag1*⟩ is also allowed, but remember set it locally inside a group. So, with

```
\babeltags{de = german}
```

yo can write

```
text \textde{German text} text
```

and

```
text
\begin{de}
German text
\end{de}
text
```

`\babelensure` [include=⟨*commands*⟩,exclude=⟨*commands*⟩,fontenc=⟨*encoding*⟩]{⟨*language*⟩}

New 3.9i Except in a few languages, like Russian, captions and dates are just strings, and do not switch the language. That means you should set it explicitly if you want to use them, or hyphenation (and in some cases the text itself) will be wrong. For example:

```
\foreignlanguage{russian}{text \foreignlanguage{polish}{\seename} text}
```

Of course, TeX can do it for you. To avoid switching the language all the while, `\babelensure` redefines the captions for a given language to wrap them with a selector. By default only the basic captions and `\today` are redefined, but you can add further macros with the key `include` in the optional argument (without commas). Macros not to be modified are listed in `exclude`. You can also enforce a font encoding with `fontenc`.[5] A couple of examples:

```
\babelensure[include=\Today]{spanish}
\babelensure[fontenc=T5]{vietnamese}
```

---

[5] With it encoded string may not work as expected.

They are activated when the language is selected (at the `afterextras` event), and it makes some assumptions which could not be fulfilled in some languages. Note also you should include only macros defined by the language, not global macros (eg, `\TeX` of `\dag`).

1.3 Getting the current language name

`\languagename` The control sequence `\languagename` contains the name of the current language. However, due to some internal inconsistencies in catcodes it should *not* be used to test its value (use iflang, by Heiko Oberdiek).

`\iflanguage` {⟨*language*⟩}{⟨*true*⟩}{⟨*false*⟩}

If more than one language is used, it might be necessary to know which language is active at a specific time. This can be checked by a call to `\iflanguage`, but note here "language" is used in the TEX sense, as a set of hyphenation patterns, and *not* as its `babel` name. This macro takes three arguments. The first argument is the name of a language; the second and third arguments are the actions to take if the result of the test is true or false respectively. The advice about `\languagename` also applies here – use iflang instead of `\iflanguage` if possible.

1.4 Selecting scripts

Currently `babel` provides no standard interface to select scripts, because they are best selected with either `\fontencoding` (low level) or a language name (high level). Even the Latin script may require different encodings (ie, sets of glyphs) depending on the language, and therefore such a switch would be in a sense incomplete.[6]

Some languages sharing the same script define macros to switch it (eg, `\textcyrillic`), but be aware they may also set the language to a certain default. Even the `babel` core defined `\textlatin`, but is was somewhat buggy because in some cases it messed up encodings and fonts (for example, if the main latin encoding was LY1), and therefore it has been deprecated.[7]

`\ensureascii` {⟨*text*⟩}

New 3.9i This macro makes sure ⟨*text*⟩ is typeset with a LICR-savvy encoding in the ASCII range. It is used to redefine `\TeX` and `\LaTeX` so that they are correctly typeset even with LGR or X2 (the complete list is stored in `\BabelNonASCII`, which by default is LGR, X2, OT2, OT3, OT6, LHE, LWN, LMA, LMC, LMS, LMU, but you can modify it). So, in some sense it fixes the bug described in the previous paragraph. If non-ASCII encodings are not loaded (or no encoding at all), it is no-op (also `\TeX` and `\LaTeX` are not redefined); otherwise, `\ensureascii` switches to the encoding at the beginning of the document if ASCII-savvy, or else the last ASCII-savvy encoding loaded. For example, if you load LY1,LGR, then it is set to LY1, but if you load LY1,T2A it is set to T2A. The symbol encodings TS1, T3, and TS3 are not taken into account, since they are not used for "ordinary" text.

---

[6]The so-called Unicode fonts does not improve the situation either. So, a font suited for Vietnamese is not necessarily suited for, say, romanization of Indic languages, and the fact it contains glyphs for Modern Greek does not mean it includes them for Classic Greek. As to directionality, it poses special challenges because it also affects individual characters and layout elements.

[7]But still defined for backwards compatibility.

The foregoing rules (which are applied "at begin document") cover most of cases. Note no asumption is made on characters above 127, which may not follow the LICR conventions – the goal is just to ensure most of the ASCII letters and symbols are the right ones.

1.5   Shorthands

A *shorthand* is a sequence of one or two characters that expands to arbitrary TeX code.

Shorthands can be used for different kinds of things, as for example: (1) in some languages shorthands such as `"a` are defined to be able to hyphenate the word if the encoding is `OT1`; (2) in some languages shorthands such as `!` are used to insert the right amount of white space; (3) several kinds of discretionaries and breaks can be inserted easily with `"-`, `"=`, etc.

The package `inputenc` as well as `xetex` an `luatex` have alleviated entering non-ASCII characters, but minority languages and some kinds of text can still require characters not directly available in the keyboards (and sometimes not even as separated or precomposed Unicode characters). As to the point 2, now `pdfTeX` provides `\knbccode`. Tools of point 3 can be still very useful in general.

There are three levels of shorthands: *user*, *language*, and *system* (by order of precedence). Version 3.9 introduces the *language user* level on top of the user level, as described below. In most cases, you will use only shorthands provided by languages.

Please, note the following:

1. Activated chars used for two-char shorthands cannot be followed by a closing brace } and the spaces following are gobbled. With one-char shorthands (eg, `:`), they are preserved.

2. If on a certain level (system, language, user) there is a one-char shorthand, two-char ones starting with that char and on the same level are ignored.

A typical error when using shorthands is the following:

```
! Argument of \language@active@arg" has an extra }.
```

It means there is a closing brace just after a shorthand, which is not allowed (eg, `"}`). Just add {} after (eg, `"{}}`).

`\shorthandon`   {⟨*shorthands-list*⟩}
`\shorthandoff`   ∗{⟨*shorthands-list*⟩}

It is sometimes necessary to switch a shorthand character off temporarily, because it must be used in an entirely different way. For this purpose, the user commands `\shorthandoff` and `\shorthandon` are provided. They each take a list of characters as their arguments.

The command `\shorthandoff` sets the `\catcode` for each of the characters in its argument to other (12); the command `\shorthandon` sets the `\catcode` to active (13). Both commands only work on 'known' shorthand characters. If a character is not known to be a shorthand character its category code will be left unchanged. New 3.9a Note however, `\shorthandoff` does not behave as you would expect with characters like ~ or ^, because they usually are not "other". For them `\shorthandoff∗` is provided, so that with

```
\shorthandoff*{~^}
```

~ is still active, very likely with the meaning of a non-breaking space, and ^ is the superscript character. The catcodes used are those when the shorthands are defined, usually when language files are loaded.

\useshorthands *{⟨*char*⟩}

The command \useshorthands initiates the definition of user-defined shorthand sequences. It has one argument, the character that starts these personal shorthands.
 New 3.9a However, user shorthands are not always alive, as they may be deactivated by languages (for example, if you use " for your user shorthands and switch from german to french, they stop working). Therefore, a starred version \useshorthands*{⟨*char*⟩} is provided, which makes sure shorthands are always activated.
Currently, if the package option shorthands is used, you must include any character to be activated with \useshorthands. This restriction will be lifted in a future release.

\defineshorthand [⟨*language*⟩,⟨*language*⟩,...]{⟨*shorthand*⟩}{⟨*code*⟩}

The command \defineshorthand takes two arguments: the first is a one- or two-character shorthand sequence, and the second is the code the shorthand should expand to.
 New 3.9a An optional argument allows to (re)define language and system shorthands (some languages do not activate shorthands, so you may want to add \languageshorthands{⟨*lang*⟩} to the corresponding \extras⟨*lang*⟩). By default, user shorthands are (re)defined.
User shorthands override language ones, which in turn override system shorthands. Language-dependent user shorthands (new in 3.9) take precedence over "normal" user shorthands.
As an example of their applications, let's assume you want a unified set of shorthand for discretionaries (languages do not define shorthands consistently, and "-, \-, "= have different meanings). You could start with, say:

```
\useshorthands*{"}
\defineshorthand{"*}{\babelhyphen{soft}}
\defineshorthand{"-}{\babelhyphen{hard}}
```

However, behaviour of hyphens is language dependent. For example, in languages like Polish and Portugese, a hard hyphen inside compound words are repeated at the beginning of the next line. You could then set:

```
\defineshorthand[*polish,*portugese]{"-}{\babelhyphen{repeat}}
```

Here, options with * set a language-dependent user shorthand, which means the generic one above only applies for the rest of languages; without * they would (re)define the language shorthands instead, which are overriden by user ones. Now, you have a single unified shorthand ("-), with a content-based meaning ('compound word hyphen') whose visual behavior is that expected in each context.

\aliasshorthand {⟨*original*⟩}{⟨*alias*⟩}

The command \aliasshorthand can be used to let another character perform the same functions as the default shorthand character. If one prefers for example to use the character / over " in typing Polish texts, this can be achieved by entering

\aliasshorthand{"}{/}. *Please note* the substitute character must *not* have been declared before as shorthand (in such case, \aliasshorthands is ignored).
The following example shows how to replace a shorthand by another

```
\aliasshorthand{~}{^}
\AtBeginDocument{\shorthandoff*{~}}
```

However, shorthands remember somehow the original character, and the fallback value is that of the latter. So, in this example, if no shorthand if found, ^ expands to a non-breaking space, because this is the value of ~ (internally, ^ calls \active@char~ or \normal@char~). Furthermore, if you change the system value of ^ with \defineshorthand nothing happens.

\languageshorthands {⟨*language*⟩}

The command \languageshorthands can be used to switch the shorthands on the language level. It takes one argument, the name of a language or none (the latter does what its name suggests).[8] Note that for this to work the language should have been specified as an option when loading the babel package. For example, you can use in english the shorthands defined by ngerman with

```
\addto\extrasenglish{\languageshorthands{ngerman}}
```

(You may also need to activate them with, for example, \useshorthands.)
Very often, this is a more convenient way to deactivate shorthands than \shorthandoff, as for example if you want to define a macro to easy typing phonetic characters with tipa:

```
\newcommand{\myipa}[1]{{\languageshorthands{none}\tipaencoding#1}}
```

\babelshorthand {⟨*shorthand*⟩}

With this command you can use a shorthand even if (1) not activated in shorthands (in this case only shorthands for the current language are taken into account, ie, not user shorthands), (2) turned off with \shorthandoff or (3) deactivated with the internal \bbl@deactivate; for example, \babelshorthand{"u} or \babelshorthand{:}. (You can conveniently define your own macros, or even you own user shorthands provided they do not ovelap.)
For your records, here is a list of shorthands, but you must check them, as they may change:[9]

Languages with no shorthands Croatian, English (any variety), Indonesian, Hebrew, Interlingua, Irish, Lower Sorbian, Malaysian, North Sami, Romanian, Scottish, Welsh

Languages with only " as defined shorthand character Albanian, Bulgarian, Danish, Dutch, Finnish, German (old and new orthography, also Austrian), Icelandic, Italian, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese (also Brazilian), Russian, Serbian (with Latin script), Slovene, Swedish, Ukrainian, Upper Sorbian

Basque " ' ~

Breton : ; ? !

Catalan " ' `

---

[8]Actually, any name not corresponding to a language group does the same as none. However, follow this convention because it might be enforced in future releases of babel to catch possible errors.

[9]Thanks to Enrico Gregorio

Czech " -
Esperanto ^
Estonian " ~
French (all varieties) : ; ? !
Galician " . ' ~ < >
Greek ~
Hungarian '
Kurmanji ^
Latin " ^ =
Slovak " ^ ' -
Spanish " . < > '
Turkish : ! =

In addition, the babel core declares ~ as a one-char shorthand which is let, like the standard ~, to a non breaking space.[10]

1.6   Package options

New 3.9a   These package options are processed before language options, so that they are taken into account irrespective of its order. The first three options have been available in previous versions.

KeepShorthandsActive   Tells babel not to deactivate shorthands after loading a language file, so that they are also availabe in the preamble.

activeacute   For some languages babel supports this options to set ' as a shorthand in case it is not done by default.

activegrave   Same for '.

shorthands=   ⟨*char*⟩⟨*char*⟩... | off

The only language shorthands activated are those given, like, eg:

```
\usepackage[esperanto,frenchb,shorthands=:;!?]{babel}
```

If ' is included, activeacute is set; if ' is included, activegrave is set. Active characters (like ~) should be preceded by \string (otherwise they will be expanded by LATEX before they are passed to the package and therefore they will not be recognized); however, t is provided for the common case of ~ (as well as c for not so common case of the comma).

With shorthands=off no language shorthands are defined, As some languages use this mechanism for tools not available otherwise, a macro \babelshorthand is defined, which allows using them; see above.

safe=   none | ref | bib

Some LATEX macros are redefined so that using shorthands is safe. With safe=bib only \nocite, \bibcite and \bibitem are redefined. With safe=ref only \newlabel, \ref and \pageref are redefined (as well as a few macros from varioref and ifthen). With safe=none no macro is redefined. This option is strongly recommended, because a good deal of incompatibilities and errors are related to

---

[10]This declaration serves to nothing, but it is preserved for backward compatibility.

these redefinitions – of course, in such a case you cannot use shorthands in these macros, but this is not a real problem (just use "allowed" characters).

math= `active` | `normal`

Shorthands are mainly intended for text, not for math. By setting this option with the value `normal` they are deactivated in math mode (default is `active`) and things like `${a'}$` (a closing brace after a shorthand) are not a source of trouble any more.

config= ⟨*file*⟩

Load ⟨*file*⟩`.cfg` instead of the default config file `bblopts.cfg` (the file is loaded even with `noconfigs`).

main= ⟨*language*⟩

Sets the main language, as explained above, ie, this language is always loaded last. If it is not given as package or global option, it is added to the list of requested languages.

headfoot= ⟨*language*⟩

By default, headlines and footlines are not touched (only marks), and if they contain language dependent macros (which is not usual) there may be unexpected results. With this option you may set the language in heads and foots.

noconfigs Global and language default config files are not loaded, so you can make sure your document is not spoilt by an unexpected `.cfg` file. However, if the key `config` is set, this file is loaded.

showlanguages Prints to the log the list of languages loaded when the format was created: number (remember dialects can share it), name, hyphenation file and exceptions file.

nocase New 3.9l Language settings for uppercase and lowercase mapping (as set by `\SetCase`) are ignored. Use only if there are incompatibilities with other packages.

silent New 3.9l No warnings and no *infos* are written to the log file.[11]

strings= `generic` | `unicode` | `encoded` | ⟨*label*⟩ | ⟨*font encoding*⟩

Selects the encoding of strings in languages supporting this feature. Predefined labels are `generic` (for traditional TeX, LICR and ASCII strings), `unicode` (for engines like `xetex` and `luatex`) and `encoded` (for special cases requiring mixed encodings). Other allowed values are font encoding codes (T1, T2A, LGR, L7X...), but only in languages supporting them. Be aware with `encoded` captions are protected, but they work in `\MakeUppercase` and the like.

hyphenmap= `off` | `main` | `select` | `other` | `other*`

New 3.9g Sets the behaviour of case mapping for hyphenation, provided the language defines it.[12] It can take the following values:

---

[11]You can use alternatively the package silence.
[12]Turned off in plain.

off deactivates this feature and no case mapping is applied;

first sets it at the first switching commands in the current or parent scope (typically, when the aux file is first read and at \begin{document}, but also the first \selectlanguage in the preamble), and it's the default if a single language option has been stated;[13]

select sets it only at \selectlanguage;

other also sets it at otherlanguage;

other∗ also sets it at otherlanguage∗ as well as in heads and foots (if the option headfoot is used) and in auxiliary files (ie, at \select@language), and it's the default if several language options have been stated. The option first can be regarded as an optimized version of other∗ for monolingual documents.[14]

1.7   The base option

With this package option babel just loads some basic macros (those in switch.def), defines \AfterBabelLanguage and exits. It also selects the hyphenations patterns for the last language passed as option (by its name in language.dat). There are two main uses: classes and packages, and as a last resort in case there are, for some reason, incompatible languages. It can be used if you just want to select the hyphenations patterns of a single language, too.

\AfterBabelLanguage   {⟨*option-name*⟩}{⟨*code*⟩}

This command is currently the only provided by base. Executes ⟨*code*⟩ when the file loaded by the corresponding package option is finished (at \ldf@finish). The setting is global. So

```
\AfterBabelLanguage{frenchb}{...}
```

does ... at the end of frenchb.ldf. It can be used in ldf files, too, but in such a case the code is executed only if ⟨*option-name*⟩ is the same as \CurrentOption (which could not be the same as the option name as set in \usepackage!).

For example, consider two languages foo and bar defining the same \macro with \newcommand. An error is raised if you attempt to load both. Here is a way to overcome this problem:

```
\usepackage[base]{babel}
\AfterBabelLanguage{foo}{%
  \let\macroFoo\macro
  \let\macro\relax}
\usepackage[foo,bar]{babel}
```

1.8   Hooks

New 3.9a A hook is a piece of code to be executed at certain events. Some hooks are predefined when luatex and xetex are used.

\AddBabelHook   {⟨*name*⟩}{⟨*event*⟩}{⟨*code*⟩}

---

[13]Duplicated options count as several ones.

[14]Providing foreign is pointless, because the case mapping applied is that at the end of paragraph, but if either xetex or luatex change this behaviour it might be added. On the other hand, other is provided even if I [JBL] think it isn't really useful, but who knows.

The same name can be applied to several events. Hooks may be enabled and disabled for all defined events with \EnableBabelHook{⟨name⟩}, \DisableBabelHook{⟨name⟩}. Names containing the string babel are reserved (they are used, for example, by \useshortands* to add a hook for the event afterextras).

Current events are the following; in some of them you can use one to three TEX parameters (#1, #2, #3), with the meaning given:

adddialect (language name, dialect name) Used by luababel.def to load the patterns if not preloaded.

patterns (language name, language with encoding) Executed just after the \language has been set. The second argument has the patterns name actually selected (in the form of either lang:ENC or lang).

hyphenation (language name, language with encoding) Executed locally just before exceptions given in \babelhyphenation are actually set.

defaultcommands Used (locally) in \StartBabelCommands.

encodedcommands (input, font encodings) Used (locally) in \StartBabelCommands. Both xetex and luatex make sure the encoded text is read correctly.

stopcommands Used to reset the the above, if necessary.

write This event comes just after the switching commands are written to the aux file.

beforeextras Just before executing \extras⟨language⟩. This event and the next one should not contain language-dependent code (for that, add it to \extras⟨language⟩).

afterextras Just after executing \extras⟨language⟩. For example, the following deactivates shorthands in all languages:

```
\AddBabelHook{noshort}{afterextras}{\languageshorthands{none}}
```

stringprocess Instead of a parameter, you can manipulate the macro \BabelString containing the string to be defined with \SetString. For example, to use an expanded version of the string in the definition, write:

```
\AddBabelHook{myhook}{stringprocess}{%
  \protected@edef\BabelString{\BabelString}}
```

initiateactive (char as active, char as other, original char) New 3.9i Executed just after a shorthand has been 'initiated'. The three parameters are the same character with different catcodes: active, other (\string'ed) and the original one.

afterreset New 3.9i Executed when selecting a language just after \originalTeX is run and reset to its base value, before executing \captions⟨language⟩ and \date⟨language⟩.

Four events are used in hyphen.cfg, which are handled in a quite different way for efficiency reasons – unlike the precedent ones, they only have a single hook and replace a default definition.

everylanguage (language) Executed before every language patterns are loaded.

loadkernel (file) By default loads switch.def. It can be used to load a different version of this files or to load nothing.

loadpatterns (patterns file) Loads the patterns file. Used by luababel.def.

loadexceptions (exceptions file) Loads the exceptions file. Used by luababel.def.

15

New 3.9a This macro contains a list of "toc" types which require a command to switch the language. Its default value is `toc,lof,lot`, but you may redefine it with `\renewcommand` (it's up to you to make sure no toc type is duplicated).

1.9 Hyphenation tools

\babelhyphen | *{⟨*type*⟩}
\babelhyphen | *{⟨*text*⟩}

New 3.9a It is customary to classify hyphens in two types: (1) *explicit* or *hard hyphens*, which in TeX are entered as `-`, and (2) *optional* or *soft hyphens*, which are entered as `\-`. Strictly, a *soft hyphen* is not a hyphen, but just a breaking oportunity or, in TeX terms, a "discretionary"; a *hard hyphen* is a hyphen with a breaking oportunity after it. A further type is a *non-breaking hyphen*, a hyphen without a breaking oportunity.

In TeX, `-` and `\-` forbid further breaking oportunities in the word. This is the desired behaviour very often, but not always, and therefore many languages provide shorthands for these cases. Unfortunately, this has not been done consistently: for example, in Dutch, Portugese, Catalan or Danish, `"-` is a hard hyphen, while in German, Spanish, Norwegian, Slovak or Russian, it is a soft hyphen. Furthermore, some of them even redefine `\-`, so that you cannot insert a soft hyphen without breaking oportunities in the rest of the word.

Therefore, some macros are provide with a set of basic "hyphens" which can be used by themselves, to define a user shorthand, or even in language files.

- `\babelhyphen{soft}` and `\babelhyphen{hard}` are self explanatory.

- `\babelhyphen{repeat}` inserts a hard hyphen which is repeated at the beginning of the next line, as done in languages like Polish, Portugese and Spanish.

- `\babelhyphen{nobreak}` inserts a hard hyphen without a break after it (even if a space follows).

- `\babelhyphen{empty}` inserts a break oportunity without a hyphen at all.

- `\babelhyphen{⟨`*text*`⟩}` is a hard "hyphen" using ⟨*text*⟩ instead. A typical case is `\babelhyphen{/}`.

With all of them hyphenation in the rest of the word is enabled. If you don't want enabling it, there is a starred counterpart: `\babelhyphen*{soft}` (which in most cases is equivalent to the original `\-`), `\babelhyphen*{hard}`, etc.

Note `hard` is also good for isolated prefixes (eg, *anti-*) and `nobreak` for isolated suffixes (eg, *-ism*), but in both cases `\babelhyphen*{nobreak}` is usually better. There are also some differences with LaTeX: (1) the character used is that set for the current font, while in LaTeX it is hardwired to `-` (a typical value); (2) the hyphen to be used in fonts with a negative `\hyphenchar` is `-`, like in LaTeX, but it can be changed to another value by redefining `\babelnullhyphen`; (3) a break after the hyphen is forbidden if preceded by a glue >0 pt (at the beginning of a word, provided it is not immediately preceded by, say, a parenthesis).

\babelhyphenation	[⟨*language*⟩,⟨*language*⟩,...]{⟨*exceptions*⟩}

New 3.9a Sets hyphenation exceptions for the languages given or, without the optional argument, for *all* languages (eg, proper nouns or common loan words, and of course monolingual documents). Language exceptions take precedence over global ones.

It can be used only in the preamble, and exceptions are set when the language is first selected, thus taking into account changes of `\lccodes`'s done in `\extras`⟨*lang*⟩ as well as the language specific encoding (not set in the preamble by default). Multiple `\babelhyphenation`'s are allowed. For example:

```
\babelhyphenation{Wal-hal-la Dar-bhan-ga}
```

Listed words are saved expanded and therefore it relies on the LICR. Of course, it also works without the LICR if the input and the font encodings are the same, like in Unicode based engines.

\babelpatterns	[⟨*language*⟩,⟨*language*⟩,...]{⟨*patterns*⟩}

New 3.9m *In luatex only*,[15] adds or replaces patterns for the languages given or, without the optional argument, for *all* languages. If a pattern for a certain combination already exists, it gets replaced by the new one.

It can be used only in the preamble, and patterns are added when the language is first selected, thus taking into account changes of `\lccodes`'s done in `\extras`⟨*lang*⟩ as well as the language specific encoding (not set in the preamble by default). Multiple `\babelpatterns`'s are allowed.

Listed patterns are saved expanded and therefore it relies on the LICR. Of course, it also works without the LICR if the input and the font encodings are the same, like in Unicode based engines.

1.10   Language attributes

\languageattribute   This is a user-level command, to be used in the preamble of a document (after `\usepackage[...]{babel}`), that declares which attributes are to be used for a given language. It takes two arguments: the first is the name of the language; the second, a (list of) attribute(s) to be used. Attributes must be set in the preamble and only once – they cannot be turned on and off. The command checks whether the language is known in this document and whether the attribute(s) are known for this language.

Very often, using a *modifier* in a package option is better.

Several language definition files use their own methods to set options. For example, frenchb uses `\frenchbsetup`, magyar (1.5) uses `\magyarOptions`; modifiers provided by spanish have no attribute counterparts. Macros settting options are also used (eg, `\ProsodicMarksOn` in latin).

1.11   Languages supported by babel

In the following table most of the languages supported by babel are listed, together with the names of the options which you can load babel with for each language. Note this list is open and the current options may be different.

Afrikaans afrikaans

---

[15]With luatex exceptions and patterns can be modified almost freely. However, this is very likely a task for a separate package and babel only provides the most basic tools.

Bahasa bahasa, indonesian, indon, bahasai, bahasam, malay, melayu
Basque basque
Breton breton
Bulgarian bulgarian
Catalan catalan
Croatian croatian
Czech czech
Danish danish
Dutch dutch
English english, USenglish, american, UKenglish, british, canadian, australian,
  newzealand
Esperanto esperanto
Estonian estonian
Finnish finnish
French french, francais, canadien, acadian
Galician galician
German austrian, german, germanb, ngerman, naustrian
Greek greek, polutonikogreek
Hebrew hebrew
Icelandic icelandic
Interlingua interlingua
Irish Gaelic irish
Italian italian
Latin latin
Lower Sorbian lowersorbian
North Sami samin
Norwegian norsk, nynorsk
Polish polish
Portuguese portuges, portuguese, brazilian, brazil
Romanian romanian
Russian russian
Scottish Gaelic scottish
Spanish spanish
Slovakian slovak
Slovenian slovene
Swedish swedish
Serbian serbian
Turkish turkish
Ukrainian ukrainian
Upper Sorbian uppersorbian
Welsh welsh

There are more languages not listed above, including hindi, thai, thaicjk, latvian, turkmen, magyar, mongolian, romansh, lithuanian, spanglish, vietnamese, japanese, pinyin, arabic, farsi, ibygreek, bgreek, serbianc, frenchle, ethiop and friulan.

Most of them work out of the box, but some may require extra fonts, encoding files, a preprocessor or even a complete framework (like CJK). For example, if you have got the velthuis/devnag package, you can create a file with extension .dn:

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage[hindi]{babel}
\begin{document}
```

```
{\dn devaanaa.m priya.h}
\end{document}
```

Then you preprocess it with `devnag` ⟨*file*⟩, which creates ⟨*file*⟩`.tex`; you can then typeset the latter with LaTeX.

1.12   Tips, workarounds, know issues and notes

- If you use the document class book *and* you use `\ref` inside the argument of `\chapter` (or just use `\ref` inside `\MakeUppercase`), LaTeX will keep complaining about an undefined label. To prevent such problems, you could revert to using uppercase labels, you can use `\lowercase{\ref{foo}}` inside the argument of `\chapter`, or, if you will not use shorthands in labels, set the `safe` option to `none` or `bib`.

- Both ltxdoc and babel use `\AtBeginDocument` to change some catcodes, and babel reloads hhline to make sure : has the right one, so if you want to change the catcode of | it has to be done using the same method at the proper place, with

```
\AtBeginDocument{\DeleteShortVerb{\|}}
```

  before loading babel. This way, when the document begins the sequence is (1) make | active (ltxdoc); (2) make it unactive (your settings); (3) make babel shorthands active (babel); (4) reload hhline (babel, now with the correct catcodes for | and :).

- Documents with several input encodings are not frequent, but sometimes are useful. You can set different encodings for different languages as the following example shows:

```
\addto\extrasfrench{\inputencoding{latin1}}
\addto\extrasrussian{\inputencoding{koi8-r}}
```

  (A recent version of inputenc is required.)

- For the hyphenation to work correctly, lccodes cannot change, because TeX only takes into account the values when the paragraph is hyphenated, i.e., when it has been finished.[16] So, if you write a chunk of French text with `\foreinglanguage`, the apostrophes might not be taken into account. This is a limitation of TeX, not of babel. Alternatively, you may use `\useshorthands` to activate ' and `\defineshorthand`, or redefine `\textquoteright` (the latter is called by the non-ASCII right quote).

- `\bibitem` is out of sync with `\selectlanguage` in the `.aux` file. The reason is `\bibitem` uses `\immediate` (and others, in fact), while `\selectlanguage` doesn't. There is no known workaround.

- Babel does not take into account `\normalsfcodes` and (non-)French spacing is not always properly (un)set by languages. However, problems are unlikely to happen and therefore this part remains untouched in version 3.9 (but it is in the 'to do' list).

---

[16]This explains why LaTeX assumes the lowercase mapping of T1 and does not provide a tool for multiple mappings. Unfortunately, `\savinghyphcodes` is not a solution either, because lccodes for hyphenation are frozen in the format and cannot be changed.

- Using a character mathematically active (ie, with math code "8000) as a shorthand can make TeX enter in an infinite loop in some rare cases. (Another issue in the 'to do' list, although there is a partial solution.)

The following packages can be useful, too (the list is still far from complete):

csquotes Logical markup for quotes.
iflang Tests correctly the current language.
hyphsubst Selects a different set of patterns for a language.
translator An open platform for packages that need to be localized.
siunitx Typesetting of numbers and physical quantities.
biblatex Programmable bibliographies and citations.
bicaption Bilingual captions.
babelbib Multilingual bibliographies.
microtype Adjusts the typesetting according to some languages (kerning and spacing). Ligatures can be disabled.
substitutefont Combines fonts in several encodings.
mkpattern Generates hyphenation patterns.
tracklang Tracks which languages have been requested.

1.13   Future work

Useful additions would be, for example, time, currency, addresses and personal names.[17]. But that is the easy part, because they don't require modifying the LaTeX internals.

More interesting are differences in the sentence structure or related to it. For example, in Basque the number precedes the name (including chapters), in Hungarian "from (1)" is "(1)-ből", but "from (3)" is "(3)-ból", in Spanish an item labelled "3.º" may be referred to as either "ítem 3.º" or "3.ᵉʳ ítem", and so on.

Even more interesting is right-to-left, vertical and bidi typesetting. Babel provided a basic support for bidi text as part of the style for Hebrew, but it is somewhat unsatisfactory and internally replaces some hardwired commands by other hardwired commands (generic changes would be much better).

Handling of "Unicode" fonts is also problematic. There is fontspec, but special macros are required (not only the NFSS ones) and it doesn't provide "orthogonal axis" for features, including those related to the language (mainly language and script). A couple of tentative macros, which solve the two main cases, are provided by babel ($\geq$3.9g) with a partial solution (only xetex and luatex, for obvious reasons), but use them at your own risk, as they might be removed in the future. For this very reason, they are described here:

- \babelFSstore{⟨*babel-language*⟩} sets the current three basic families (rm, sf, tt) as the default for the language given. In most cases, this macro will be enough.

- \babelFSdefault{⟨*babel-language*⟩}{⟨*fontspec-features*⟩} patches \fontspec so that the given features are always passed as the optional argument or added to it (not an ideal solution). Use it only if you select some fonts in the document with \fontspec.

So, for example:

---

[17]See for example POSIX, ISO 14652 and the Unicode Common Locale Data Repository (CLDR).

```
\setmainfont[Language=Turkish]{Minion Pro}
\setsansfont[Language=Turkish]{Myriad Pro}
\babelFSstore{turkish}
\setmainfont{Minion Pro}
\setsansfont{Myriad Pro}
\babelFSfeatures{turkish}{Language=Turkish}
```

Note you can set any feature required for the language – not only `Language`, but also `Script` or a local `.fea`. This makes those macros a bit more verbose, but also more powerful.

2   Loading languages with `language.dat`

TeX and most engines based on it (pdfTeX, xetex, ϵ-TeX, the main exception being luatex) require hyphenation patterns to be preloaded when a format is created (eg, LaTeX, XeLaTeX, pdfLaTeX). `babel` provides a tool which has become standand in many distributions and based on a "configuration file" named `language.dat`. The exact way this file is used depends on the distribution, so please, read the documentation for the latter (note also some distributions generate the file with some tool).

New 3.9q   With luatex, however, patterns are loaded on the fly when requested by the language (except the "0th" language, typically english, which is preloaded always).[18] Until 3.9n, this task was delegated to the package luatex-hyphen, by Khaled Hosny, Élie Roux, and Manuel Pégourié-Gonnard, and required an extra file named `language.dat.lua`, but now a new mechanism has been devised based solely on `language.dat`. **You must rebuild the formats** if upgrading from a previous version. You may want to have a local `language.dat` for a particular project (for example, a book on Chemistry).[19]

Unfortunately, the new model is intrinsically incompatible with the previous one, which means you can experience some problems with polyglossia. If using the latter, you must load the patterns with babel as shown in the following example:

```
\usepackage[base,french,dutch,spanish,english]{babel}
\usepackage{polyglossia}
\setmainlanguage{french}
\setotherlanguages{dutch,spanish,english}
```

Be aware this is, very likely, a temporary solution.

2.1   Format

In that file the person who maintains a TeX environment has to record for which languages he has hyphenation patterns *and* in which files these are stored[20]. When hyphenation exceptions are stored in a separate file this can be indicated by naming that file *after* the file with the hyphenation patterns.

The file can contain empty lines and comments, as well as lines which start with an equals (=) sign. Such a line will instruct LaTeX that the hyphenation patterns just processed have to be known under an alternative name. Here is an example:

---

[18]This feature was added to 3.9o, but it was buggy. Both 3.9o and 3.9p are deprecated.

[19]The loader for lua(e)tex is slightly different as it's not based on babel but on `etex.src`. Until 3.9p it just didn't work, but thanks to the new code it works by reloading the data in the babel way, i.e., with `language.dat`.

[20]This is because different operating systems sometimes use *very* different file-naming conventions.

```
% File    : language.dat
% Purpose : tell iniTeX what files with patterns to load.
english   english.hyphenations
=british

dutch     hyphen.dutch exceptions.dutch % Nederlands
german hyphen.ger
```

You may also set the font encoding the patterns are intended for by following the language name by a colon and the encoding code.[21] For example:

```
german:T1 hyphenT1.ger
german hyphen.ger
```

With the previous settings, if the enconding when the language is selected is `T1` then the patterns in `hyphenT1.ger` are used, but otherwise use those in `hyphen.ger` (note the encoding could be set in `\extras⟨lang⟩`).
A typical error when using `babel` is the following:

```
No hyphenation patterns were preloaded for
the language '<lang>' into the format.
Please, configure your TeX system to add them and
rebuild the format. Now I will use the patterns
preloaded for english instead}}
```

It simply means you must reconfigure `language.dat`, either by hand or with the tools provided by your distribution.

3   The interface between the core of **babel** and the language definition files

The *language definition files* (ldf) must conform to a number of conventions, because these files have to fill in the gaps left by the common code in `babel.def`, i. e., the definitions of the macros that produce texts. Also the language-switching possibility which has been built into the `babel` system has its implications.
The following assumptions are made:

- Some of the language-specific definitions might be used by plain TeX users, so the files have to be coded so that they can be read by both LaTeX and plain TeX. The current format can be checked by looking at the value of the macro `\fmtname`.

- The common part of the `babel` system redefines a number of macros and environments (defined previously in the document style) to put in the names of macros that replace the previously hard-wired texts. These macros have to be defined in the language definition files.

- The language definition files must define five macros, used to activate and deactivate the language-specific definitions. These macros are `\⟨lang⟩hyphenmins`, `\captions⟨lang⟩`, `\date⟨lang⟩`, `\extras⟨lang⟩` and `\noextras⟨lang⟩`(the last two may be left empty); where ⟨lang⟩ is either the name of the language definition file or the name of the LaTeX option that is to

---

[21]This in not a new feature, but in former versions it didn't work correctly.

be used. These macros and their functions are discussed below. You must define all or none for a language (or a dialect); defining, say, \date⟨*lang*⟩ but not \captions⟨*lang*⟩ does not raise an error but can lead to unexpected results.

- When a language definition file is loaded, it can define \l@⟨*lang*⟩ to be a dialect of \language0 when \l@⟨*lang*⟩ is undefined.

- Language names must be all lowercase. If an unknow language is selected, babel will attempt setting it after lowercasing its name.

- The semantics of modifiers is not defined (on purpose). In most cases, they will just be simple separated options (eg., spanish), but a language might require, say, a set of options organized as a tree with suboptions (in such a case, the recommended separator is /).

Some recommendations:

- The preferred shorthand is ", which is not used in LaTeX (quotes are entered as '' and ''). Other good choices are characters which are not used in a certain context (eg, = in an ancient language). Note however =, <, >, : and the like can be dangerous, because they may be used as part of the syntax of some elements (numeric expressions, key/value pairs, etc.).

- Captions should not contain shorthands or encoding dependent commands (the latter is not always possible, but should be clearly documented). They should be defined using the LICR. You may also use the new tools for encoded strings, described below.

- Avoid adding things to \noextras⟨*lang*⟩ except for umlauthigh and friends, \bbl@deactivate, \bbl@(non)frenchspacing, and language specific macros. Use always, if possible, \bbl@save and \bbl@savevariable (except if you still want to have access to the previous value). Do not reset a macro or a setting to a hardcoded value. Never. Instead save its value in \extras⟨*lang*⟩.

- Do not switch scripts. If you want to make sure a set of glyphs is used, switch either the font encoding (low level) or the language (high level, which in turn may switch the font encoding). Usage of things like \latintext is deprecated.[22]

There are no special requirements for documenting your language files. Now they are not included in the base babel manual, so provide a standalone document suited for your needs (and the corresponding PDF, if you like), as well as other files you think can be useful (eg, samples, readme).

3.1 Basic macros

In the core of the babel system, several macros are defined for use in language definition files. Their purpose is to make a new language known. The first two are related to hyphenation patterns.

\addlanguage   The macro \addlanguage is a non-outer version of the macro \newlanguage, defined in plain.tex version 3.x. For older versions of plain.tex and lplain.tex a substitute definition is used. Here "language" is used in the TeX sense of set of hyphenation patterns.

\adddialect	The macro \adddialect can be used when two languages can (or must) use the same hyphenation patterns. This can also be useful for languages for which no patterns are preloaded in the format. In such cases the default behaviour of the babel system is to define this language as a 'dialect' of the language for which the patterns were loaded as \language0. Here "language" is used in the TeX sense of set of hyphenation patterns.
\<lang>hyphenmins	The macro \⟨lang⟩hyphenmins is used to store the values of the \lefthyphenmin and \righthyphenmin. Redefine this macro to set your own values, with two numbers corresponding to these two parameters. For example:

```
\renewcommand\spanishhyphenmins{34}
```

	(Assigning \lefthyphenmin and \righthyphenmin directly in \extras<lang> has no effect.)
\providehyphenmins	The macro \providehyphenmins should be used in the language definition files to set \lefthyphenmin and \righthyphenmin. This macro will check whether these parameters were provided by the hyphenation file before it takes any action. If these values have been already set, this command is ignored (currenty, default pattern files do *not* set them).
\captions⟨lang⟩	The macro \captions⟨lang⟩ defines the macros that hold the texts to replace the original hard-wired texts.
\date⟨lang⟩	The macro \date⟨lang⟩ defines \today.
\extras⟨lang⟩	The macro \extras⟨lang⟩ contains all the extra definitions needed for a specific language. This macro, like the following, is a hook – you can add things to it, but it must not be used directly.
\noextras⟨lang⟩	Because we want to let the user switch between languages, but we do not know what state TeX might be in after the execution of \extras⟨lang⟩, a macro that brings TeX into a predefined state is needed. It will be no surprise that the name of this macro is \noextras⟨lang⟩.
\bbl@declare@ttribute	This is a command to be used in the language definition files for declaring a language attribute. It takes three arguments: the name of the language, the attribute to be defined, and the code to be executed when the attribute is to be used.
\main@language	To postpone the activation of the definitions needed for a language until the beginning of a document, all language definition files should use \main@language instead of \selectlanguage. This will just store the name of the language, and the proper language will be activated at the start of the document.
\ProvidesLanguage	The macro \ProvidesLanguage should be used to identify the language definition files. Its syntax is similar to the syntax of the LaTeX command \ProvidesPackage.
\LdfInit	The macro \LdfInit performs a couple of standard checks that must be made at the beginning of a language definition file, such as checking the category code of the @-sign, preventing the .ldf file from being processed twice, etc.
\ldf@quit	The macro \ldf@quit does work needed if a .ldf file was processed earlier. This includes resetting the category code of the @-sign, preparing the language to be activated at \begin{document} time, and ending the input stream.
\ldf@finish	The macro \ldf@finish does work needed at the end of each .ldf file. This includes resetting the category code of the @-sign, loading a local configuration file, and preparing the language to be activated at \begin{document} time.
\loadlocalcfg	After processing a language definition file, LaTeX can be instructed to load a local configuration file. This file can, for instance, be used to add strings to

---

[22]But not removed, for backward compatibility.

$\texttt{\textbackslash captions}\langle lang\rangle$ to support local document classes. The user will be informed that this configuration file has been loaded. This macro is called by `\ldf@finish`.

`\substitutefontfamily` (Deprecated.) This command takes three arguments, a font encoding and two font family names. It creates a font description file for the first font in the given encoding. This `.fd` file will instruct LaTeX to use a font from the second family when a font from the first family in the given encoding seems to be needed.

3.2 Skeleton

Here is the basic structure of an `ldf` file, with a language, a dialect and an attribute. Strings are best defined using the method explained in in sec. 3.7 (`babel` 3.9 and later).

```
\ProvidesLanguage{<language>}
     [2016/04/23 v0.0 <Language> support from the babel system]
\LdfInit{<language>}{captions<language>}

\ifx\undefined\l@<language>
  \@nopatterns{<Language>}
  \adddialect\l@<language>0
\fi

\adddialect\l@<dialect>\l@<language>

\bbl@declare@ttribute{<language>}{<attrib>}{%
  \expandafter\addto\expandafter\extras<language>
  \expandafter{\extras<attrib><language>}%
  \let\captions<language>\captions<attrib><language>}

\providehyphenmins{<language>}{\tw@\thr@@}

\StartBabelCommands*{<language>}{captions}
\SetString\chaptername{<chapter name>}
% More strings

\StartBabelCommands*{<language>}{date}
\SetString\monthiname{<name of first month>}
% More strings

\StartBabelCommands*{<dialect>}{captions}
\SetString\chaptername{<chapter name>}
% More strings

\StartBabelCommands*{<dialect>}{date}
\SetString\monthiname{<name of first month>}
% More strings

\EndBabelCommands

\addto\extras<language>{}
\addto\noextras<language>{}
\let\extras<dialect>\extras<language>
\let\noextras<dialect>\noextras<language>

\ldf@finish{<language>}
```

3.3 Support for active characters

In quite a number of language definition files, active characters are introduced. To facilitate this, some support macros are provided.

\initiate@active@char The internal macro \initiate@active@char is used in language definition files to instruct LaTeX to give a character the category code 'active'. When a character has been made active it will remain that way until the end of the document. Its definition may vary.

\bbl@activate The command \bbl@activate is used to change the way an active character

\bbl@deactivate expands. \bbl@activate 'switches on' the active behaviour of the character. \bbl@deactivate lets the active character expand to its former (mostly) non-active self.

\declare@shorthand The macro \declare@shorthand is used to define the various shorthands. It takes three arguments: the name for the collection of shorthands this definition belongs to; the character (sequence) that makes up the shorthand, i.e. ~ or "a; and the code to be executed when the shorthand is encountered. (It does *not* raise an error if the shorthand character has not been "initiated".)

\bbl@add@special The TeXbook states: "Plain TeX includes a macro called \dospecials that is

\bbl@remove@special essentially a set macro, representing the set of all characters that have a special category code." [1, p. 380] It is used to set text 'verbatim'. To make this work if more characters get a special category code, you have to add this character to the macro \dospecial. LaTeX adds another macro called \@sanitize representing the same character set, but without the curly braces. The macros \bbl@add@special⟨char⟩ and \bbl@remove@special⟨char⟩ add and remove the character ⟨char⟩ to these two sets.

3.4 Support for saving macro definitions

Language definition files may want to *re*define macros that already exist. Therefore a mechanism for saving (and restoring) the original definition of those macros is provided. We provide two macros for this[23].

\babel@save To save the current meaning of any control sequence, the macro \babel@save is provided. It takes one argument, ⟨csname⟩, the control sequence for which the meaning has to be saved.

\babel@savevariable A second macro is provided to save the current value of a variable. In this context, anything that is allowed after the \the primitive is considered to be a variable. The macro takes one argument, the ⟨variable⟩.

The effect of the preceding macros is to append a piece of code to the current definition of \originalTeX. When \originalTeX is expanded, this code restores the previous definition of the control sequence or the previous value of the variable.

3.5 Support for extending macros

\addto The macro \addto{⟨control sequence⟩}{⟨TeX code⟩} can be used to extend the definition of a macro. The macro need not be defined (ie, it can be undefined or \relax). This macro can, for instance, be used in adding instructions to a macro like \extrasenglish.

Be careful when using this macro, because depending on the case the assignment could be either global (usually) or local (sometimes). That does not seem very

---

[23]This mechanism was introduced by Bernd Raichle.

consistent, but this behaviour is preserved for backward compatibility. If you are using etoolbox, by Philipp Lehman, consider using the tools provided by this package instead of \addto.

3.6 Macros common to a number of languages

\bbl@allowhyphens In several languages compound words are used. This means that when TeX has to hyphenate such a compound word, it only does so at the '-' that is used in such words. To allow hyphenation in the rest of such a compound word, the macro \bbl@allowhyphens can be used.

\allowhyphens Same as \bbl@allowhyphens, but does nothing if the encoding is T1. It is intended mainly for characters provided as real glyphs by this encoding but constructed with \accent in OT1.

Note the previous command (\bbl@allowhyphens) has different applications (hyphens and discretionaries) than this one (composite chars). Note also prior to version 3.7, \allowhyphens had the behaviour of \bbl@allowhyphens.

\set@low@box For some languages, quotes need to be lowered to the baseline. For this purpose the macro \set@low@box is available. It takes one argument and puts that argument in an \hbox, at the baseline. The result is available in \box0 for further processing.

\save@sf@q Sometimes it is necessary to preserve the \spacefactor. For this purpose the macro \save@sf@q is available. It takes one argument, saves the current spacefactor, executes the argument, and restores the spacefactor.

\bbl@frenchspacing The commands \bbl@frenchspacing and \bbl@nonfrenchspacing can be used to
\bbl@nonfrenchspacing properly switch French spacing on and off.

3.7 Encoding-dependent strings

New 3.9a Babel 3.9 provides a way of defining strings in several encodings, intended mainly for luatex and xetex. This is the only new feature requiring changes in language files if you want to make use of it.

Furthermore, it must be activated explicitly, with the package option strings. If there is no strings, these blocks are ignored, except \SetCases (and except if forced as described below). In other words, the old way of defining/switching strings still works and it's used by default.

It consist is a series of blocks started with \StartBabelCommands. The last block is closed with \EndBabelCommands. Each block is a single group (ie, local declarations apply until the next \StartBabelCommands or \EndBabelCommands). An ldf may contain several series of this kind.

Thanks to this new feature, string values and string language switching are not mixed any more. No need of \addto. If the language is french, just redefine \frenchchaptername.

\StartBabelCommands {⟨*language-list*⟩}{⟨*category*⟩}[⟨*selector*⟩]

The ⟨*language-list*⟩ specifies which languages the block is intended for. A block is taken into account only if the \CurrentOption is listed here. Alternatively, you can define \BabelLanguages to a comma-separated list of languages to be defined (if undefined, \StartBabelCommands sets it to \CurrentOption). You may write \CurrentOption as the language, but this is discouraged – a explicit name (or names) is much better and clearer.

A "selector" is a name to be used as value in package option `strings`, optionally followed by extra info about the encodings to be used. The name `unicode` must be used for xetex and luatex (the key `strings` has also other two special values: `generic` and `encoded`).

If a string is set several times (because several blocks are read), the first one take precedence (ie, it works much like `\providecommand`).

Encoding info is `charset=` followed by a charset, which if given sets how the strings should be traslated to the internal representation used by the engine, typically `utf8`, which is the only value supported currently (default is no traslations). Note `charset` is applied by luatex and xetex when reading the file, not when the macro or string is used in the document.

A list of font encodings which the strings are expected to work with can be given after `fontenc=` (separated with spaces, if two or more) – recommended, but not mandatory, although blocks without this key are not taken into account if you have requested `strings=encoded`.

Blocks without a selector are read always if the key `strings` has been used. They provide fallback values, and therefore must be the last blocks; they should be provided always if possible and all strings should be defined somehow inside it; they can be the only blocks (mainly LGC scripts using the LICR). Blocks without a selector can be activated explicitly with `strings=generic` (no block is taken into account except those). With `strings=encoded`, strings in those blocks are set as default (internally, ?). With `strings=encoded` strings are protected, but they are correctly expanded in `\MakeUppercase` and the like. If there is no key `strings`, string definitions are ignored, but `\SetCase`s are still honoured (in a `encoded` way). The ⟨*category*⟩ is either `captions`, `date` or `extras`. You must stick to these three categories, even if no error is raised when using other name.[24] It may be empty, too, but in such a case using `\SetString` is an error (but not `\SetCase`).

```
\StartBabelCommands{language}{captions}
  [unicode, fontenc=EU1 EU2, charset=utf8]
\SetString{\chaptername}{utf8-string}

\StartBabelCommands{language}{captions}
\SetString{\chaptername}{ascii-maybe-LICR-string}

\EndBabelCommands
```

A real example is:

```
\StartBabelCommands{austrian}{date}
  [unicode, fontenc=EU1 EU2, charset=utf8]
  \SetString\monthiname{Jänner}

\StartBabelCommands{german,austrian}{date}
  [unicode, fontenc=EU1 EU2, charset=utf8]
  \SetString\monthiiiname{März}

\StartBabelCommands{austrian}{date}
  \SetString\monthiname{J\"{a}nner}

\StartBabelCommands{german}{date}
  \SetString\monthiname{Januar}
```

---

[24]In future releases further categories may be added.

```
\StartBabelCommands{german,austrian}{date}
  \SetString\monthiiname{Februar}
  \SetString\monthiiiname{M\"{a}rz}
  \SetString\monthivname{April}
  \SetString\monthvname{Mai}
  \SetString\monthviname{Juni}
  \SetString\monthviiname{Juli}
  \SetString\monthviiiname{August}
  \SetString\monthixname{September}
  \SetString\monthxname{Oktober}
  \SetString\monthxiname{November}
  \SetString\monthxiiname{Dezenber}
  \SetString\today{\number\day.~%
    \csname month\romannumeral\month name\endcsname\space
    \number\year}

\StartBabelCommands{german,austrian}{captions}
  \SetString\prefacename{Vorwort}
  [etc.]

\EndBabelCommands
```

When used in ldf files, previous values of \⟨category⟩⟨language⟩ are overriden, which means the old way to define strings still works and used by default (to be precise, is first set to undefined and then strings are added). However, when used in the preamble or in a package, new settings are added to the previous ones, if the language exists (in the babel sense, ie, if \date⟨language⟩ exists).

\StartBabelCommands ∗{⟨language-list⟩}{⟨category⟩}[⟨selector⟩]

The starred version just forces strings to take a value – if not set as package option, then the default for the engine is used. This is not done by default to prevent backward incompatibilities, but if you are creating a new language this version is better. It's up to the maintainers of the current languages to decide if using it is appropiate.[25]

\EndBabelCommands Marks the end of the series of blocks.

\AfterBabelCommands {⟨code⟩}

The code is delayed and executed at the global scope just after \EndBabelCommands.

\SetString {⟨macro-name⟩}{⟨string⟩}

Adds ⟨macro-name⟩ to the current category, and defines globally ⟨lang-macro-name⟩ to ⟨code⟩ (after applying the transformation corresponding to the current charset or defined with the hook stringprocess).
Use this command to define strings, without including any "logic" if possible, which should be a separated macro. See the example above for the date.

\SetStringLoop {⟨macro-name⟩}{⟨string-list⟩}

---

[25]This replaces in 3.9g a short-lived \UseStrings which has been removed because it did not work.

A convenient way to define several ordered names at once. For example, to define \abmoniname, \abmoniiname, etc. (and similarly with abday):

```
\SetStringLoop{abmon#1name}{en,fb,mr,ab,my,jn,jl,ag,sp,oc,nv,dc}
\SetStringLoop{abday#1name}{lu,ma,mi,ju,vi,sa,do}
```

#1 is replaced by the roman numeral.

\SetCase   [⟨*map-list*⟩]{⟨*toupper-code*⟩}{⟨*tolower-code*⟩}

Sets globally code to be executed at \MakeUppercase and \MakeLowercase. The code would be typically things like \let\BB\bb and \uccode or \lccode (although for the reasons explained above, changes in lc/uc codes may not work). A ⟨*map-list*⟩ is a series of macros using the internal format of \@uclclist (eg, \bb\BB\cc\CC). The mandatory arguments take precedence over the optional one. This command, unlike \SetString, is executed always (even without strings), and it is intented for minor readjustments only.
For example, as T1 is the default case mapping in LATEX, we could set for Turkish:

```
\StartBabelCommands{turkish}{}[ot1enc, fontenc=OT1]
\SetCase
  {\uccode"10='I\relax}
  {\lccode'I="10\relax}

\StartBabelCommands{turkish}{}[unicode, fontenc=EU1 EU2, charset=utf8]
\SetCase
  {\uccode'i='İ\relax
   \uccode'ı='I\relax}
  {\lccode'İ='i\relax
   \lccode'I='ı\relax}

\StartBabelCommands{turkish}{}
\SetCase
  {\uccode'i="9D\relax
   \uccode"19='I\relax}
  {\lccode"9D='i\relax
   \lccode'I="19\relax}

\EndBabelCommands
```

(Note the mapping for OT1 is not complete.)

\SetHyphenMap   {⟨*to-lower-macros*⟩}

New 3.9g Case mapping serves in TEX for two unrelated purposes: case transforms (upper/lower) and hyphenation. \SetCase handles the former, while hyphenation is handled by \SetHyphenMap and controlled with the package option hyphenmap. So, even if internally they are based on the same TEX primitive (\lccode), babel sets them separately.
There are three helper macros to be used inside \SetHyphenMap:

- \BabelLower{⟨*uccode*⟩}{⟨*lccode*⟩} is similar to \lccode but it's ignored if the char has been set and saves the original lccode to restore it when switching the language (except with hyphenmap=first).

- \BabelLowerMM{⟨*uccode-from*⟩}{⟨*uccode-to*⟩}{⟨*step*⟩}{⟨*lccode-from*⟩} loops though the given uppercase codes, using the step, and assigns them the

lccode, which is also increased (MM stands for *many-to-many*).

- \BabelLowerMO{⟨*uccode-from*⟩}{⟨*uccode-to*⟩}{⟨*step*⟩}{⟨*lccode*⟩} loops though the given uppercase codes, using the step, and assigns them the lccode, which is fixed (MO stands for *many-to-one*).

An example is (which is redundant, because these assignments are done by both luatex and xetex):

```
\SetHyphenMap{\BabelLowerMM{"100}{"11F}{2}{"101}}
```

This macro is not intended to fix wrong mappings done by Unicode (which are the default in both xetex and luatex) – if an assignment is wrong, fix it directly.

4 Compatibility and changes

4.1 Compatibility with `german.sty`

The file german.sty has been one of the sources of inspiration for the babel system. Because of this I wanted to include german.sty in the babel system. To be able to do that I had to allow for one incompatibility: in the definition of the macro \selectlanguage in german.sty the argument is used as the ⟨*number*⟩ for an \ifcase. So in this case a call to \selectlanguage might look like \selectlanguage{\german}.
In the definition of the macro \selectlanguage in babel.def the argument is used as a part of other macronames, so a call to \selectlanguage now looks like \selectlanguage{german}. Notice the absence of the escape character. As of version 3.1a of babel both syntaxes are allowed.
All other features of the original german.sty have been copied into a new file, called germanb.sty[26].
Although the babel system was developed to be used with LATEX, some of the features implemented in the language definition files might be needed by plain TEX users. Care has been taken that all files in the system can be processed by plain TEX.

4.2 Compatibility with `ngerman.sty`

When used with the options ngerman or naustrian, babel will provide all features of the package ngerman. There is however one exception: The commands for special hyphenation of double consonants ("ff etc.) and ck ("ck), which are no longer required with the new German orthography, are undefined. With the ngerman package, however, these commands will generate appropriate warning messages only.

4.3 Compatibility with the `french` package

It has been reported to me that the package french by Bernard Gaulle (gaulle@idris.fr) works together with babel. On the other hand, it seems *not* to work well together with a lot of other packages. Therefore I have decided to no longer load french.ldf by default. Instead, when you want to use the package by Bernard Gaulle, you will have to request it specifically, by passing either frenchle or frenchpro as an option to babel.

---

[26]The 'b' is added to the name to distinguish the file from Partls' file.

4.4 Changes in babel version 3.9

Most of changes in version 3.9 are related to bugs, either to fix them (there were lots), or to provide some alternatives. Even new features like `\babelhyphen` are intended to solve a certain problem (in this case, the lacking of a uniform syntax and behaviour for shorthands across languages). These changes are described in this manual in the correspondin place.

4.5 Changes in babel version 3.7

In babel version 3.7 a number of bugs that were found in version 3.6 are fixed. Also a number of changes and additions have occurred:

- Shorthands are expandable again. The disadvantage is that one has to type `'{}a` when the acute accent is used as a shorthand character. The advantage is that a number of other problems (such as the breaking of ligatures, etc.) have vanished.

- Two new commands, `\shorthandon` and `\shorthandoff` have been introduced to enable to temporarily switch off one or more shorthands.

- Support for typesetting Greek has been enhanced. Code from the `kdgreek` package (suggested by the author) was added and `\greeknumeral` has been added.

- Support for typesetting Basque is now available thanks to Juan Aguirregabiria.

- Support for typesetting Serbian with Latin script is now available thanks to Dejan Muhamedagić and Jankovic Slobodan.

- Support for typesetting Hebrew (and potential support for typesetting other right-to-left written languages) is now available thanks to Rama Porrat and Boris Lavva.

- Support for typesetting Bulgarian is now available thanks to Georgi Boshnakov.

- Support for typesetting Latin is now available, thanks to Claudio Beccari and Krzysztof Konrad Żelechowski.

- Support for typesetting North Sami is now available, thanks to Regnor Jernsletten.

- The options `canadian`, `canadien` and `acadien` have been added for Canadian English and French use.

- A language attribute has been added to the `\mark...` commands in order to make sure that a Greek header line comes out right on the last page before a language switch.

- Hyphenation pattern files are now read *inside a group*; therefore any changes a pattern file needs to make to lowercase codes, uppercase codes, and category codes are kept local to that group. If they are needed for the language, these changes will need to be repeated and stored in `\extras...`

- The concept of language attributes is introduced. It is intended to give the user some control over the features a language-definition file provides. Its first use is for the Greek language, where the user can choose the $\pi o \lambda v \tau o v \kappa \acute{o}$ ("Polutoniko" or multi-accented) Greek way of typesetting texts. These attributes will possibly find wider use in future releases.

- The environment hyphenrules is introduced.

- The syntax of the file language.dat has been extended to allow (optionally) specifying the font encoding to be used while processing the patterns file.

- The command \providehyphenmins should now be used in language definition files in order to be able to keep any settings provided by the pattern file.

4.6   Changes in babel version 3.6

In babel version 3.6 a number of bugs that were found in version 3.5 are fixed. Also a number of changes and additions have occurred:

- A new environment otherlanguage* is introduced. it only switches the 'specials', but leaves the 'captions' untouched.

- The shorthands are no longer fully expandable. Some problems could only be solved by peeking at the token following an active character. The advantage is that '{}a works as expected for languages that have the ' active.

- Support for typesetting french texts is much enhanced; the file francais.ldf is now replaced by frenchb.ldf which is maintained by Daniel Flipo.

- Support for typesetting the russian language is again available. The language definition file was originally developed by Olga Lapko from CyrTUG. The fonts needed to typeset the russian language are now part of the babel distribution. The support is not yet up to the level which is needed according to Olga, but this is a start.

- Support for typesetting greek texts is now also available. What is offered in this release is a first attempt; it will be enhanced later on by Yannis Haralambous.

- in babel 3.6j some hooks have been added for the development of support for Hebrew typesetting.

- Support for typesetting texts in Afrikaans (a variant of Dutch, spoken in South Africa) has been added to dutch.ldf.

- Support for typesetting Welsh texts is now available.

- A new command \aliasshorthand is introduced. It seems that in Poland various conventions are used to type the necessary Polish letters. It is now possible to use the character / as a shorthand character instead of the character ", by issuing the command \aliasshorthand{"}{/}.

- The shorthand mechanism now deals correctly with characters that are already active.

- Shorthand characters are made active at \begin{document}, not earlier. This is to prevent problems with other packages.

- A *preambleonly* command \substitutefontfamily has been added to create .fd files on the fly when the font families of the Latin text differ from the families used for the Cyrillic or Greek parts of the text.

- Three new commands \LdfInit, \ldf@quit and \ldf@finish are introduced that perform a number of standard tasks.

- In babel 3.6k the language Ukrainian has been added and the support for Russian typesetting has been adapted to the package 'cyrillic' to be released with the December 1998 release of LaTeX 2ε.

4.7 Changes in babel version 3.5

In babel version 3.5 a lot of changes have been made when compared with the previous release. Here is a list of the most important ones:

- the selection of the language is delayed until \begin{document}, which means you must add appropriate \selectlanguage commands if you include \hyphenation lists in the preamble of your document.

- babel now has a language environment and a new command \foreignlanguage;

- the way active characters are dealt with is completely changed. They are called 'shorthands'; one can have three levels of shorthands: on the user level, the language level, and on 'system level'. A consequence of the new way of handling active characters is that they are now written to auxiliary files 'verbatim';

- A language change now also writes information in the .aux file, as the change might also affect typesetting the table of contents. The consequence is that an .aux file generated by a LaTeXformat with babel preloaded gives errors when read with a LaTeXformat without babel; but I think this probably doesn't occur;

- babel is now compatible with the inputenc and fontenc packages;

- the language definition files now have a new extension, ldf;

- the syntax of the file language.dat is extended to be compatible with the french package by Bernard Gaulle;

- each language definition file looks for a configuration file which has the same name, but the extension .cfg. It can contain any valid LaTeX code.

Part II
The code

5 Identification and loading of required files

Code documentation is still under revision.

The babel package after unpacking it consists of the following files:

switch.def defines macros to set and switch languages.
babel.def defines the rest of macros. It has tow parts: a generic one and a second one only for LaTeX.
babel.sty is the LATEX package, which set options and load language styles.
plain.def defines some LATEX macros required by `babel.def` and provides a few tools for Plain.
hyphen.cfg is the file to be used when generating the formats to load hyphenation patterns. By default it also loads `switch.def`.

The babel installer extends docstrip with a few "pseudo-guards" to set "variables" used at installation time. They are used with <@name@> at the appropiated places in the source code and shown below with ⟨⟨*name*⟩⟩. That brings a little bit of literate programming.

```
1 ⟨⟨version=3.9s⟩⟩
2 ⟨⟨date=2016/04/23⟩⟩
```

We define some basic macros which just make the code cleaner. \bbl@add is now used internally instead of \addto because of the unpredictable behaviour of the latter. Used in `babel.def` and in `babel.sty`, which means in LATEX is executed twice, but we need them when defining options and `babel.def` cannot be load until options have been defined.

```
3 ⟨⟨*Basic macros⟩⟩ ≡
4 \def\bbl@add#1#2{%
5   \@ifundefined{\expandafter\@gobble\string#1}%
6     {\def#1{#2}}%
7     {\expandafter\def\expandafter#1\expandafter{#1#2}}}
8 \def\bbl@csarg#1#2{\expandafter#1\csname bbl@#2\endcsname}%
9 \long\def\bbl@afterelse#1\else#2\fi{\fi#1}
10 \long\def\bbl@afterfi#1\fi{\fi#1}
11 \def\bbl@loop#1#2#3{\bbl@@loop#1{#3}#2,\@nnil,}
12 \def\bbl@loopx#1#2{\expandafter\bbl@loop\expandafter#1\expandafter{#2}}
13 \def\bbl@@loop#1#2#3,{%
14   \ifx\@nnil#3\relax\else
15     \def#1{#3}#2\bbl@afterfi\bbl@@loop#1{#2}%
16   \fi}
17 \def\bbl@for#1#2#3{\bbl@loopx#1{#2}{\ifx#1\@empty\else#3\fi}}
18 ⟨⟨/Basic macros⟩⟩
```

Some files identify themselves with a LATEX macro. The following code is placed before them to define (and then undefine) if not in LATEX.

```
19 ⟨⟨*Make sure ProvidesFile is defined⟩⟩ ≡
20 \ifx\ProvidesFile\@undefined
21   \def\ProvidesFile#1[#2 #3 #4]{%
22     \wlog{File: #1 #4 #3 <#2>}%
23     \let\ProvidesFile\@undefined}
24 \fi
25 ⟨⟨/Make sure ProvidesFile is defined⟩⟩
```

The following code is used in `babel.sty` and `babel.def`, and makes sure the current version of `switch.ldf` is used, if different from that in the format.

```
26 ⟨⟨*Load switch if newer⟩⟩ ≡
27 \def\bbl@tempa{⟨⟨version⟩⟩}%
28 \ifx\bbl@version\bbl@tempa\else
```

```
29   \input switch.def\relax
30 \fi
31 ⟨⟨/Load switch if newer⟩⟩
```

The following code is also used in `babel.sty` and `babel.def`, and loads (only once) the data in `language.dat`.

```
32 ⟨⟨*Load patterns in luatex⟩⟩ ≡
33 \ifx\directlua\@undefined\else
34   \ifx\bbl@luapatterns\@undefined
35     \input luababel.def
36   \fi
37 \fi
38 ⟨⟨/Load patterns in luatex⟩⟩
```

The following code is used in `babel.def` and `switch.def`.

```
39 ⟨⟨*Load macros for plain if not LaTeX⟩⟩ ≡
40 \ifx\AtBeginDocument\@undefined
41   \input plain.def\relax
42 \fi
43 ⟨⟨/Load macros for plain if not LaTeX⟩⟩
```

5.1   Multiple languages

\language   Plain TeX version 3.0 provides the primitive `\language` that is used to store the current language. When used with a pre-3.0 version this function has to be implemented by allocating a counter. The following block is used in `switch.def` and `hyphen.cfg`; the latter may seem redundant, but remember `babel` doesn't requires loading `switch.def` in the format.

```
44 ⟨⟨*Define core switching macros⟩⟩ ≡
45 \ifx\language\@undefined
46   \csname newcount\endcsname\language
47 \fi
48 ⟨⟨/Define core switching macros⟩⟩
```

\last@language   Another counter is used to store the last language defined. For pre-3.0 formats an extra counter has to be allocated.

\addlanguage   To add languages to TeX's memory plain TeX version 3.0 supplies `\newlanguage`, in a pre-3.0 environment a similar macro has to be provided. For both cases a new macro is defined here, because the original `\newlanguage` was defined to be `\outer`.
For a format based on plain version 2.x, the definition of `\newlanguage` can not be copied because `\count 19` is used for other purposes in these formats. Therefore `\addlanguage` is defined using a definition based on the macros used to define `\newlanguage` in plain TeX version 3.0.
For formats based on plain version 3.0 the definition of `\newlanguage` can be simply copied, removing `\outer`. Plain TeX version 3.0 uses `\count 19` for this purpose.

```
49 ⟨⟨*Define core switching macros⟩⟩ ≡
50 \ifx\newlanguage\@undefined
51   \csname newcount\endcsname\last@language
52   \def\addlanguage#1{%
53     \global\advance\last@language\@ne
54     \ifnum\last@language<\@cclvi
```

```
55     \else
56        \errmessage{No room for a new \string\language!}%
57     \fi
58     \global\chardef#1\last@language
59     \wlog{\string#1 = \string\language\the\last@language}}
60 \else
61   \countdef\last@language=19
62   \def\addlanguage{\alloc@9\language\chardef\@cclvi}
63 \fi
64 ⟨⟨/Define core switching macros⟩⟩
```

Identify each file that is produced from this source file.

```
65 ⟨*driver&!user⟩
66 \ProvidesFile{babel.drv}[⟨⟨date⟩⟩ ⟨⟨version⟩⟩]
67 ⟨/driver&!user⟩
68 ⟨*driver & user⟩
69 \ProvidesFile{user.drv}[⟨⟨date⟩⟩ ⟨⟨version⟩⟩]
70 ⟨/driver & user⟩
```

Now we make sure all required files are loaded. When the command
\AtBeginDocument doesn't exist we assume that we are dealing with a plain-based
format or LaTeX2.09. In that case the file plain.def is needed (which also defines
\AtBeginDocument, and therefore it is not loaded twice). We need the first part
when the format is created, and \orig@dump is used as a flag. Otherwise, we need
to use the second part, so \orig@dump is not defined (plain.def undefines it).
Check if the current version of switch.def has been previously loaded (mainly,
hyphen.cfg). If not, load it now. We cannot load babel.def here because we first
need to declare and process the package options.

6   The Package File (LaTeX)

In order to make use of the features of LaTeX 2_ε, the babel system contains a
package file, babel.sty. This file is loaded by the \usepackage command and
defines all the language options whose name is different from that of the .ldf file
(like variant spellings). It also takes care of a number of compatibility issues with
other packages an defines a few aditional package options.
Apart from all the language options below we also have a few options that
influence the behaviour of language definition files.
Many of the following options don't do anything themselves, they are just defined
in order to make it possible for babel and language definition files to check if one
of them was specified by the user.

6.1 base

The first option to be processed is base, which set the hyphenation patterns then
resets ver@babel.sty so that LaTeXforgets about the first loading. After
switch.def has been loaded (above) and \AfterBabelLanguage defined, exits.

```
71 ⟨*package⟩
72 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[2005/12/01]
73 \ProvidesPackage{babel}[⟨⟨date⟩⟩ ⟨⟨version⟩⟩ The Babel package]
74 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{debug}
75   {\input switch.def\relax}
76   {⟨⟨Load switch if newer⟩⟩}
```

```
77 ⟨⟨Load patterns in luatex⟩⟩
78 ⟨⟨Basic macros⟩⟩
79 \def\AfterBabelLanguage#1{%
80   \global\expandafter\bbl@add\csname#1.ldf-h@@k\endcsname}%
```

If the format created a list of loaded languages (in \bbl@languages), get the name of the 0-th to show the actual language used.

```
81 \ifx\bbl@languages\@undefined\else
82   \begingroup
83     \catcode'\^^I=12
84     \@ifpackagewith{babel}{showlanguages}{%
85       \begingroup
86         \def\bbl@elt#1#2#3#4{\wlog{#2^^I#1^^I#3^^I#4}}%
87         \wlog{<*languages>}%
88         \bbl@languages
89         \wlog{</languages>}%
90       \endgroup}{}
91   \endgroup
92   \def\bbl@elt#1#2#3#4{%
93     \ifnum#2=\z@
94       \gdef\bbl@nulllanguage{#1}%
95       \def\bbl@elt##1##2##3##4{}%
96     \fi}%
97   \bbl@languages
98 \fi
```

Now the base option. With it we can define (and load, with luatex) hyphenation patterns, even if we are not interesed in the rest of babel. Useful for polyglossia, too.

```
99 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{base}{%
100   \ifx\directlua\@undefined
101     \DeclareOption*{\bbl@patterns{\CurrentOption}}%
102   \else
103     \DeclareOption*{\bbl@patterns@lua{\CurrentOption}}%
104   \fi
105   \DeclareOption{base}{}%
106   \DeclareOption{showlanguages}{}%
107   \ProcessOptions
108   \global\expandafter\let\csname opt@babel.sty\endcsname\relax
109   \global\expandafter\let\csname ver@babel.sty\endcsname\relax
110   \global\let\@ifl@ter@@\@ifl@ter
111   \def\@ifl@ter#1#2#3#4#5{\global\let\@ifl@ter\@ifl@ter@@}%
112   \endinput}{}%
```

6.2 key=value options and other general option

The following macros extract language modifiers, and only real package options are kept in the option list. Modifiers are saved and assigned to \BabelModifiers at \bbl@load@language; when no modifiers have been given, the former is \relax. How modifiers are handled are left to language styles; they can use \in@, loop them with \@for o load keyval).

```
113 \bbl@csarg\let{tempa\expandafter}\csname opt@babel.sty\endcsname
114 \def\bbl@tempb#1.#2{%
115   #1\ifx\@empty#2\else,\bbl@afterfi\bbl@tempb#2\fi}%
116 \def\bbl@tempd#1.#2\@nnil{%
```

```
117  \ifx\@empty#2%
118    \edef\bbl@tempc{\ifx\bbl@tempc\@empty\else\bbl@tempc,\fi#1}%
119  \else
120    \in@{=}{#1}\ifin@
121      \edef\bbl@tempc{\ifx\bbl@tempc\@empty\else\bbl@tempc,\fi#1.#2}%
122    \else
123      \edef\bbl@tempc{\ifx\bbl@tempc\@empty\else\bbl@tempc,\fi#1}%
124      \bbl@csarg\edef{mod@#1}{\bbl@tempb#2}%
125    \fi
126  \fi}
127 \let\bbl@tempc\@empty
128 \bbl@for\bbl@tempa\bbl@tempa{%
129   \expandafter\bbl@tempd\bbl@tempa.\@empty\@nnil}
130 \expandafter\let\csname opt@babel.sty\endcsname\bbl@tempc
```

The next option tells babel to leave shorthand characters active at the end of processing the package. This is *not* the default as it can cause problems with other packages, but for those who want to use the shorthand characters in the preamble of their documents this can help.

```
131 \DeclareOption{KeepShorthandsActive}{}
132 \DeclareOption{activeacute}{}
133 \DeclareOption{activegrave}{}
134 \DeclareOption{debug}{}
135 \DeclareOption{noconfigs}{}
136 \DeclareOption{showlanguages}{}
137 \DeclareOption{silent}{}
138 \DeclareOption{shorthands=off}{\bbl@tempa shorthands=\bbl@tempa}
139 ⟨⟨More package options⟩⟩
```

Handling of package options is done in three passes. (I [JBL] am not very happy with the idea, anyway.) The first one processes options which has been declared above or follow the syntax <key>=<value>, the second one loads the requested languages, except the main one if set with the key main, and the third one loads the latter. First, we "flag" valid keys with a nil value.

```
140 \let\bbl@opt@shorthands\@nnil
141 \let\bbl@opt@config\@nnil
142 \let\bbl@opt@main\@nnil
143 \let\bbl@opt@headfoot\@nnil
```

The following tool is defined temporarily to store the values of options.

```
144 \def\bbl@tempa#1=#2\bbl@tempa{%
145   \expandafter\ifx\csname bbl@opt@#1\endcsname\@nnil
146     \expandafter\edef\csname bbl@opt@#1\endcsname{#2}%
147   \else
148     \bbl@error{%
149       Bad option '#1=#2'. Either you have misspelled the\\%
150       key or there is a previous setting of '#1'}{%
151       Valid keys are 'shorthands', 'config', 'strings', 'main',\\%
152       'headfoot', 'safe', 'math'}
153   \fi}
```

Now the option list is processed, taking into account only currently declared options (including those declared with a =), and <key>=<value> options (the former take precedence). Unrecognized options are saved in \bbl@language@opts, because they are language options.

```
154 \let\bbl@language@opts\@empty
155 \DeclareOption*{%
```

```
156   \@expandtwoargs\in@{\string=}{\CurrentOption}%
157   \ifin@
158     \expandafter\bbl@tempa\CurrentOption\bbl@tempa
159   \else
160     \edef\bbl@language@opts{%
161       \ifx\bbl@language@opts\@empty\else\bbl@language@opts,\fi
162       \CurrentOption}%
163   \fi}
```

Now we finish the first pass (and start over).

```
164 \ProcessOptions*
```

6.3   Conditional loading of shorthands

If there is no `shorthands=<chars>`, the original `babel` macros are left untouched, but if there is, these macros are wrapped (in `babel.def`) to define only those given. A bit of optimization: if there is no `shorthands=`, then `\bbl@ifshorthands` is always true, and it is always false if `shorthands` is empty. Also, some code makes sense only with `shorthands=...`.

```
165 \def\bbl@sh@string#1{%
166   \ifx#1\@empty\else
167     \ifx#1t\string~%
168     \else\ifx#1c\string,%
169     \else\string#1%
170     \fi\fi
171     \expandafter\bbl@sh@string
172   \fi}
173 \ifx\bbl@opt@shorthands\@nnil
174   \def\bbl@ifshorthand#1#2#3{#2}%
175 \else\ifx\bbl@opt@shorthands\@empty
176   \def\bbl@ifshorthand#1#2#3{#3}%
177 \else
```

The following macro tests if a shortand is one of the allowed ones.

```
178   \def\bbl@ifshorthand#1{%
179     \@expandtwoargs\in@{\string#1}{\bbl@opt@shorthands}%
180     \ifin@
181       \expandafter\@firstoftwo
182     \else
183       \expandafter\@secondoftwo
184     \fi}
```

We make sure all chars in the string are 'other', with the help of an auxiliary macro defined above (which also zaps spaces).

```
185   \edef\bbl@opt@shorthands{%
186     \expandafter\bbl@sh@string\bbl@opt@shorthands\@empty}%
```

The following is ignored with `shorthands=off`, since it is intended to take some aditional actions for certain chars.

```
187   \bbl@ifshorthand{'}%
188     {\PassOptionsToPackage{activeacute}{babel}}{}
189   \bbl@ifshorthand{'}%
190     {\PassOptionsToPackage{activegrave}{babel}}{}
191 \fi\fi
```

With `headfoot=lang` we can set the language used in heads/foots. For example, in babel/3796 just adds `headfoot=english`. It misuses `\@resetactivechars` but seems to work.

```
192 \ifx\bbl@opt@headfoot\@nnil\else
193   \g@addto@macro\@resetactivechars{%
194     \set@typeset@protect
195     \expandafter\select@language@x\expandafter{\bbl@opt@headfoot}%
196     \let\protect\noexpand}
197 \fi
```

For the option safe we use a different approach – `\bbl@opt@safe` says which macros are redefined (B for bibs and R for refs). By default, both are set.

```
198 \@ifundefined{bbl@opt@safe}{\def\bbl@opt@safe{BR}}{}
199 \ifx\bbl@opt@main\@nnil\else
200   \edef\bbl@language@opts{%
201     \ifx\bbl@language@opts\@empty\else\bbl@language@opts,\fi
202       \bbl@opt@main}
203 \fi
```

6.4   Language options

Languages are loaded when processing the corresponding option *except* if a `main` language has been set. In such a case, it is not loaded until all options has been processed. The following macro inputs the ldf file and does some additional checks (`\input` works, too, but possible errors are not catched).

```
204 \let\bbl@afterlang\relax
205 \let\BabelModifiers\relax
206 \let\bbl@loaded\@empty
207 \def\bbl@load@language#1{%
208   \InputIfFileExists{#1.ldf}%
209     {\edef\bbl@loaded{\CurrentOption
210       \ifx\bbl@loaded\@empty\else,\bbl@loaded\fi}%
211     \expandafter\let\expandafter\bbl@afterlang
212       \csname\CurrentOption.ldf-h@@k\endcsname
213     \expandafter\let\expandafter\BabelModifiers
214       \csname bbl@mod@\CurrentOption\endcsname}%
215     {\bbl@error{%
216       Unknown option '\CurrentOption'. Either you misspelled it\\%
217       or the language definition file \CurrentOption.ldf was not found}{%
218       Valid options are: shorthands=, KeepShorthandsActive,\\%
219       activeacute, activegrave, noconfigs, safe=, main=, math=\\%
220       headfoot=, strings=, config=, hyphenmap=, or a language name.}}}
```

Now, we set language options whose names are different from `ldf` files.

```
221 \DeclareOption{acadian}{\bbl@load@language{frenchb}}
222 \DeclareOption{afrikaans}{\bbl@load@language{dutch}}
223 \DeclareOption{american}{\bbl@load@language{english}}
224 \DeclareOption{australian}{\bbl@load@language{english}}
225 \DeclareOption{bahasa}{\bbl@load@language{bahasai}}
226 \DeclareOption{bahasai}{\bbl@load@language{bahasai}}
227 \DeclareOption{bahasam}{\bbl@load@language{bahasam}}
228 \DeclareOption{brazil}{\bbl@load@language{portuges}}
229 \DeclareOption{brazilian}{\bbl@load@language{portuges}}
230 \DeclareOption{british}{\bbl@load@language{english}}
231 \DeclareOption{canadian}{\bbl@load@language{english}}
232 \DeclareOption{canadien}{\bbl@load@language{frenchb}}
```

```
233 \DeclareOption{francais}{\bbl@load@language{frenchb}}
234 \DeclareOption{french}{\bbl@load@language{frenchb}}%
235 \DeclareOption{hebrew}{%
236   \input{rlbabel.def}%
237   \bbl@load@language{hebrew}}
238 \DeclareOption{hungarian}{\bbl@load@language{magyar}}
239 \DeclareOption{indon}{\bbl@load@language{bahasai}}
240 \DeclareOption{indonesian}{\bbl@load@language{bahasai}}
241 \DeclareOption{lowersorbian}{\bbl@load@language{lsorbian}}
242 \DeclareOption{malay}{\bbl@load@language{bahasam}}
243 \DeclareOption{meyalu}{\bbl@load@language{bahasam}}
244 \DeclareOption{melayu}{\bbl@load@language{bahasam}}
245 \DeclareOption{newzealand}{\bbl@load@language{english}}
246 \DeclareOption{nynorsk}{\bbl@load@language{norsk}}
247 \DeclareOption{polutonikogreek}{%
248   \bbl@load@language{greek}%
249   \languageattribute{greek}{polutoniko}}
250 \DeclareOption{portuguese}{\bbl@load@language{portuges}}
251 \DeclareOption{russian}{\bbl@load@language{russianb}}
252 \DeclareOption{UKenglish}{\bbl@load@language{english}}
253 \DeclareOption{ukrainian}{\bbl@load@language{ukraineb}}
254 \DeclareOption{uppersorbian}{\bbl@load@language{usorbian}}
255 \DeclareOption{USenglish}{\bbl@load@language{english}}
```

Another way to extend the list of 'known' options for babel is to create the file
bblopts.cfg in which one can add option declarations. However, this mechanism
is deprecated – if you want an alternative name for a language, just create a new
.ldf file loading the actual one. You can also set the name of the file with the
package option config=<name>, which will load <name>.cfg instead.

```
256 \ifx\bbl@opt@config\@nnil
257   \@ifpackagewith{babel}{noconfigs}{}%
258     {\InputIfFileExists{bblopts.cfg}%
259       {\typeout{*************************************^^J%
260               * Local config file bblopts.cfg used^^J%
261               *}}%
262     {}}%
263 \else
264   \InputIfFileExists{\bbl@opt@config.cfg}%
265     {\typeout{*************************************^^J%
266               * Local config file \bbl@opt@config.cfg used^^J%
267               *}}%
268   {\bbl@error{%
269      Local config file '\bbl@opt@config.cfg' not found}{%
270      Perhaps you misspelled it.}}%
271 \fi
```

Recognizing global options in packages not having a closed set of them is not
trivial, as for them to be processed they must be defined explicitly. So, package
options not yet taken into account and stored in bbl@language@opts are assumed
to be languages (note this list also contains the language given with main). If not
declared above, the name of the option and the file are the same.

```
272 \bbl@for\bbl@tempa\bbl@language@opts{%
273   \@ifundefined{ds@\bbl@tempa}%
274     {\edef\bbl@tempb{%
275       \noexpand\DeclareOption
276         {\bbl@tempa}%
```

```
277          {\noexpand\bbl@load@language{\bbl@tempa}}}%
278      \bbl@tempb}%
279      \@empty}
```

Now, we make sure an option is explicitly declared for any language set as global option, by checking if an `ldf` exists. The previous step was, in fact, somewhat redundant, but that way we minimize accesing the file system just to see if the option could be a language.

```
280 \bbl@for\bbl@tempa\@classoptionslist{%
281    \@ifundefined{ds@\bbl@tempa}%
282      {\IfFileExists{\bbl@tempa.ldf}%
283        {\edef\bbl@tempb{%
284          \noexpand\DeclareOption
285            {\bbl@tempa}%
286            {\noexpand\bbl@load@language{\bbl@tempa}}}%
287        \bbl@tempb}%
288      \@empty}%
289    \@empty}
```

If a main language has been set, store it for the third pass.

```
290 \ifx\bbl@opt@main\@nnil\else
291    \expandafter
292    \let\expandafter\bbl@loadmain\csname ds@\bbl@opt@main\endcsname
293    \DeclareOption{\bbl@opt@main}{}
294 \fi
```

And we are done, because all options for this pass has been declared. Those already processed in the first pass are just ignored.

The options have to be processed in the order in which the user specified them (except, of course, global options, which LaTeX processes before):

```
295 \def\AfterBabelLanguage#1{%
296    \bbl@ifsamestring\CurrentOption{#1}{\global\bbl@add\bbl@afterlang}{}}
297 \DeclareOption*{}
298 \ProcessOptions*
```

This finished the second pass. Now the third one begins, which loads the main language set with the key `main`. A warning is raised if the main language is not the same as the last named one, or if the value of the key `main` is not a language. Then execute directly the option (because it could be used only in `main`). After loading all languages, we deactivate \AfterBabelLanguage.

```
299 \ifx\bbl@opt@main\@nnil
300    \edef\bbl@tempa{\@classoptionslist,\bbl@language@opts}
301    \let\bbl@tempc\@empty
302    \bbl@for\bbl@tempb\bbl@tempa{%
303      \@expandtwoargs\in@{,\bbl@tempb,}{,\bbl@loaded,}%
304      \ifin@\edef\bbl@tempc{\bbl@tempb}\fi}
305    \def\bbl@tempa#1,#2\@nnil{\def\bbl@tempb{#1}}
306    \expandafter\bbl@tempa\bbl@loaded,\@nnil
307    \ifx\bbl@tempb\bbl@tempc\else
308      \bbl@warning{%
309        Last declared language option is '\bbl@tempc',\\%
310        but the last processed one was '\bbl@tempb'.\\%
311        The main language cannot be set as both a global\\%
312        and a package option. Use 'main=\bbl@tempc' as\\%
313        option. Reported}%
314    \fi
315 \else
```

```
316  \DeclareOption{\bbl@opt@main}{\bbl@loadmain}
317  \ExecuteOptions{\bbl@opt@main}
318  \DeclareOption*{}
319  \ProcessOptions*
320 \fi
321 \def\AfterBabelLanguage{%
322    \bbl@error
323      {Too late for \string\AfterBabelLanguage}%
324      {Languages have been loaded, so I can do nothing}}
```

In order to catch the case where the user forgot to specify a language we check whether \bbl@main@language, has become defined. If not, no language has been loaded and an error message is displayed.

```
325 \ifx\bbl@main@language\@undefined
326   \bbl@error{%
327     You haven't specified a language option}{%
328     You need to specify a language, either as a global option\\%
329     or as an optional argument to the \string\usepackage\space
330     command;\\%
331     You shouldn't try to proceed from here, type x to quit.}
332 \fi
333 ⟨/package⟩
```

7   The kernel of Babel (common)

The kernel of the babel system is stored in either hyphen.cfg or switch.def and babel.def. The file babel.def contains most of the code, while switch.def defines the language switching commands; both can be read at run time. The file hyphen.cfg is a file that can be loaded into the format, which is necessary when you want to be able to switch hyphenation patterns (by default, it also inputs switch.def, for "historical reasons", but it is not necessary). When babel.def is loaded it checks if the current version of switch.def is in the format; if not it is loaded. A further file, babel.sty, contains LaTeX-specific stuff.
Because plain TeX users might want to use some of the features of the babel system too, care has to be taken that plain TeX can process the files. For this reason the current format will have to be checked in a number of places. Some of the code below is common to plain TeX and LaTeX, some of it is for the LaTeX case only.
Plain formats based on etex (etex, xetex, luatex) don't load hyphen.cfg but etex.src, which follows a different naming convention, so we need to define the babel names. It presumes language.def exists and it is the same file used when formats were created.

7.1   Tools

\bbl@engine takes the following values: 0 is pdfTeX, 1 is luatex, and 2 is xetex. You may use it in your language style if necessary.

```
334 ⟨*core⟩
335 ⟨⟨Make sure ProvidesFile is defined⟩⟩
336 \ProvidesFile{babel.def}[⟨⟨date⟩⟩ ⟨⟨version⟩⟩ Babel common definitions]
337 ⟨⟨Load macros for plain if not LaTeX⟩⟩
338 \ifx\bbl@ifshorthand\@undefined
339   \def\bbl@ifshorthand#1#2#3{#2}%
```

```
340    \def\bbl@opt@safe{BR}
341    \def\AfterBabelLanguage#1#2{}
342    \let\bbl@afterlang\relax
343    \let\bbl@language@opts\@empty
344 \fi
345 ⟨⟨Load switch if newer⟩⟩
346 \ifx\bbl@languages\@undefined
347   \ifx\directlua\@undefined
348     \openin1 = language.def
349     \ifeof1
350       \closein1
351       \message{I couldn't find the file language.def}
352     \else
353       \closein1
354       \begingroup
355 \def\addlanguage#1#2#3#4#5{%
356   \expandafter\ifx\csname lang@#1\endcsname\relax\else
357     \global\expandafter\let\csname l@#1\expandafter\endcsname
358       \csname lang@#1\endcsname
359   \fi}%
360 \def\uselanguage#1{}%
361 \input language.def
362       \endgroup
363     \fi
364   \fi
365   \chardef\l@english\z@
366 \fi
367 ⟨⟨Load patterns in luatex⟩⟩
368 ⟨⟨Basic macros⟩⟩
369 \def\bbl@csarg#1#2{\expandafter#1\csname bbl@#2\endcsname}%
370 \chardef\bbl@engine=%
371   \ifx\directlua\@undefined
372     \ifx\XeTeXinputencoding\@undefined
373       \z@
374     \else
375       \tw@
376     \fi
377   \else
378     \@ne
379   \fi
```

\bbl@afterelse Because the code that is used in the handling of active characters may need to
\bbl@afterfi look ahead, we take extra care to 'throw' it over the \else and \fi parts of an
              \if-statement[27]. These macros will break if another \if...\fi statement appears
              in one of the arguments and it is not enclosed in braces.

```
380 \long\def\bbl@afterelse#1\else#2\fi{\fi#1}
381 \long\def\bbl@afterfi#1\fi{\fi#1}
```

\addto For each language four control sequences have to be defined that control the
        language-specific definitions. To be able to add something to these macro once
        they have been defined the macro \addto is introduced. It takes two arguments, a
        ⟨control sequence⟩ and TEX-code to be added to the ⟨control sequence⟩.

---

[27]This code is based on code presented in TUGboat vol. 12, no2, June 1991 in "An expansion Power
Lemma" by Sonja Maus.

If the ⟨*control sequence*⟩ has not been defined before it is defined now. The control
sequence could also expand to \relax, in which case a circular definition results.
The net result is a stack overflow. Otherwise the replacement text for the ⟨*control
sequence*⟩ is expanded and stored in a token register, together with the TEX-code
to be added. Finally the ⟨*control sequence*⟩ is *re*defined, using the contents of the
token register.

```
382 \def\addto#1#2{%
383   \ifx#1\@undefined
384     \def#1{#2}%
385   \else
386     \ifx#1\relax
387       \def#1{#2}%
388     \else
389       {\toks@\expandafter{#1#2}%
390        \xdef#1{\the\toks@}}%
391     \fi
392   \fi}
```

The macro \initiate@active@char takes all the necessary actions to make its
argument a shorthand character. The real work is performed once for each
character.

```
393 \def\bbl@withactive#1#2{%
394   \begingroup
395     \lccode'~='#2\relax
396     \lowercase{\endgroup#1~}}
```

\bbl@redefine   To redefine a command, we save the old meaning of the macro. Then we redefine
                it to call the original macro with the 'sanitized' argument. The reason why we do it
                this way is that we don't want to redefine the LATEX macros completely in case
                their definitions change (they have changed in the past).
                Because we need to redefine a number of commands we define the command
                \bbl@redefine which takes care of this. It creates a new control sequence,
                \org@...

```
397 \def\bbl@redefine#1{%
398   \edef\bbl@tempa{\expandafter\@gobble\string#1}%
399   \expandafter\let\csname org@\bbl@tempa\endcsname#1%
400   \expandafter\def\csname\bbl@tempa\endcsname}
```

This command should only be used in the preamble of the document.

```
401 \@onlypreamble\bbl@redefine
```

\bbl@redefine@long   This version of \babel@redefine can be used to redefine \long commands such as
                     \ifthenelse.

```
402 \def\bbl@redefine@long#1{%
403   \edef\bbl@tempa{\expandafter\@gobble\string#1}%
404   \expandafter\let\csname org@\bbl@tempa\endcsname#1%
405   \expandafter\long\expandafter\def\csname\bbl@tempa\endcsname}
406 \@onlypreamble\bbl@redefine@long
```

\bbl@redefinerobust   For commands that are redefined, but which *might* be robust we need a slightly
                      more intelligent macro. A robust command foo is defined to expand to
                      \protect\foo␣. So it is necessary to check whether \foo␣ exists. The result is
                      that the command that is being redefined is always robust afterwards. Therefore
                      all we need to do now is define \foo␣.

46

```
407 \def\bbl@redefinerobust#1{%
408   \edef\bbl@tempa{\expandafter\@gobble\string#1}%
409   \expandafter\ifx\csname\bbl@tempa\space\endcsname\relax
410     \expandafter\let\csname org@\bbl@tempa\endcsname#1%
411     \expandafter\edef\csname\bbl@tempa\endcsname{\noexpand\protect
412       \expandafter\noexpand\csname\bbl@tempa\space\endcsname}%
413   \else
414     \expandafter\let\csname org@\bbl@tempa\expandafter\endcsname
415                     \csname\bbl@tempa\space\endcsname
416   \fi
417   \expandafter\def\csname\bbl@tempa\space\endcsname}
```

This command should only be used in the preamble of the document.

```
418 \@onlypreamble\bbl@redefinerobust
```

7.2 Hooks

Note they are loaded in babel.def. switch.def only provides a "hook" for hooks (with a default value which is a no-op, below). Admittedly, the current implementation is a somewhat simplistic and does vety little to catch errors, but it is intended for developpers, after all. \bbl@usehooks is the commands used by babel to execute hooks defined for an event.

```
419 \def\AddBabelHook#1#2{%
420   \@ifundefined{bbl@hk@#1}{\EnableBabelHook{#1}}{}%
421   \def\bbl@tempa##1,#2=##2,##3\@empty{\def\bbl@tempb{##2}}%
422   \expandafter\bbl@tempa\bbl@evargs,#2=,\@empty
423   \@ifundefined{bbl@ev@#1@#2}%
424     {\bbl@csarg\bbl@add{ev@#2}{\bbl@elt{#1}}%
425      \bbl@csarg\newcommand}%
426     {\bbl@csarg\let{ev@#1@#2}\relax
427      \bbl@csarg\newcommand}%
428   {ev@#1@#2}[\bbl@tempb]}
429 \def\EnableBabelHook#1{\bbl@csarg\let{hk@#1}\@firstofone}
430 \def\DisableBabelHook#1{\bbl@csarg\let{hk@#1}\@gobble}
431 \def\bbl@usehooks#1#2{%
432   \def\bbl@elt##1{%
433     \@nameuse{bbl@hk@##1}{\@nameuse{bbl@ev@##1@#1}#2}}%
434   \@nameuse{bbl@ev@#1}}
```

To ensure forward compatibility, arguments in hooks are set implicitly. So, if a further argument is added in the future, there is no need to change the existing code. Note events intended for hyphen.cfg are also loaded (just in case you need them for some reason).

```
435 \def\bbl@evargs{,% don't delete the comma
436   everylanguage=1,loadkernel=1,loadpatterns=1,loadexceptions=1,%
437   adddialect=2,patterns=2,defaultcommands=0,encodedcommands=2,write=0,%
438   beforeextras=0,afterextras=0,stopcommands=0,stringprocess=0,%
439   hyphenation=2,initiateactive=3,afterreset=0}
```

\babelensure The user command just parses the optional argument and creates a new macro named \bbl@ens@⟨*language*⟩. We register a hook at the afterextras event which just executes this macro in a "complete" selection (which, if undefined, is \relax and does nothing). This part is somewhat involved because we have to make sure things are expanded the correct number of times.

47

The macro \bbl@ens@⟨*language*⟩ contains
\bbl@ensure{⟨*include*⟩}{⟨*exclude*⟩}{⟨*fontenc*⟩}, which in turn loops over the
macros names in \bbl@ensured, excluding (with the help of \in@) those in the
exclude list. If the fontenc is given (and not \relax), the \fontencoding is also
added. Then we loop over the include list, but if the macro already contains
\foreignlanguage, nothing is done. Note this macro (1) is not restricted to the
preamble, and (2) changes are local.

\bbl@ensured is the list of macros supposed to be "ensured".

```
440 \newcommand\babelensure[2][]{%
441   \AddBabelHook{babel-ensure}{afterextras}{%
442     \ifcase\bbl@select@type
443       \@nameuse{bbl@e@\languagename}%
444     \fi}%
445   \begingroup
446     \let\bbl@ens@include\@empty
447     \let\bbl@ens@exclude\@empty
448     \def\bbl@ens@fontenc{\relax}%
449     \def\bbl@tempb##1{%
450       \ifx\@empty##1\else\noexpand##1\expandafter\bbl@tempb\fi}%
451     \edef\bbl@tempa{\bbl@tempb#1\@empty}%
452     \def\bbl@tempb##1=##2\@@{\@namedef{bbl@ens@##1}{##2}}%
453     \bbl@for\bbl@tempa\bbl@tempa{\expandafter\bbl@tempb\bbl@tempa\@@}%
454     \def\bbl@tempc{\bbl@ensure}%
455     \expandafter\bbl@add\expandafter\bbl@tempc\expandafter{%
456       \expandafter{\bbl@ens@include}}%
457     \expandafter\bbl@add\expandafter\bbl@tempc\expandafter{%
458       \expandafter{\bbl@ens@exclude}}%
459     \toks@\expandafter{\bbl@tempc}%
460     \edef\x{%
461       \endgroup
462       \noexpand\@namedef{bbl@e@#2}{\the\toks@{\bbl@ens@fontenc}}}%
463     \x}
464 \def\bbl@ensure#1#2#3{%
465   \def\bbl@tempb##1{% elt for \bbl@ensured list
466     \ifx##1\@empty\else
467       \in@{##1}{#2}%
468       \ifin@\else
469         \@ifundefined{bbl@ensure@\languagename}%
470           {\edef\bbl@tempa{%
471             \noexpand\DeclareRobustCommand
472             \bbl@csarg\noexpand{ensure@\languagename}[1]{%
473               \noexpand\foreignlanguage{\languagename}%
474               {\ifx\relax#3\else
475                 \noexpand\fontencoding{#3}\noexpand\selectfont
476                \fi
477                ########1}}}%
478           \bbl@tempa}{}%
479         \toks@\expandafter{##1}%
480         \edef##1{%
481           \bbl@csarg\noexpand{ensure@\languagename}%
482           {\the\toks@}}%
483       \fi
484       \expandafter\bbl@tempb
485     \fi}%
486   \expandafter\bbl@tempb\bbl@ensured\@empty
```

48

```
487    \def\bbl@tempa##1{% elt for include list
488      \ifx##1\@empty\else
489        \bbl@csarg\in@{ensure@\languagename\expandafter}\expandafter{##1}%
490        \ifin@\else
491          \bbl@tempb##1\@empty
492        \fi
493        \expandafter\bbl@tempa
494      \fi}%
495    \bbl@tempa#1\@empty}
496  \def\bbl@ensured{%
497    \prefacename\refname\abstractname\bibname\chaptername\appendixname
498    \contentsname\listfigurename\listtablename\indexname\figurename
499    \tablename\partname\enclname\ccname\headtoname\pagename\seename
500    \alsoname\proofname\glossaryname\today}
```

7.3 Setting up language files

\LdfInit   The second version of \LdfInit macro takes two arguments. The first argument is
the name of the language that will be defined in the language definition file; the
second argument is either a control sequence or a string from which a control
sequence should be constructed. The existence of the control sequence indicates
that the file has been processed before.

At the start of processing a language definition file we always check the category
code of the at-sign. We make sure that it is a 'letter' during the processing of the
file. We also save its name as the last called option, even if not loaded.

Another character that needs to have the correct category code during processing
of language definition files is the equals sign, '=', because it is sometimes used in
constructions with the \let primitive. Therefore we store its current catcode and
restore it later on.

Now we check whether we should perhaps stop the processing of this file. To do
this we first need to check whether the second argument that is passed to
\LdfInit is a control sequence. We do that by looking at the first token after
passing #2 through string. When it is equal to \@backslashchar we are dealing
with a control sequence which we can compare with \@undefined.

If so, we call \ldf@quit to set the main language, restore the category code of the
@-sign and call \endinput

When #2 was *not* a control sequence we construct one and compare it with \relax.
Finally we check \originalTeX.

```
501  \def\LdfInit#1#2{%
502    \chardef\atcatcode=\catcode'\@
503    \catcode'\@=11\relax
504    \chardef\eqcatcode=\catcode'\=
505    \catcode'\==12\relax
506    \expandafter\if\expandafter\@backslashchar
507                 \expandafter\@car\string#2\@nil
508      \ifx#2\@undefined\else
509        \ldf@quit{#1}%
510      \fi
511    \else
512      \expandafter\ifx\csname#2\endcsname\relax\else
513        \ldf@quit{#1}%
514      \fi
515    \fi
516    \let\bbl@screset\@empty
```

```
517    \let\BabelStrings\bbl@opt@strings
518    \let\BabelOptions\@empty
519    \let\BabelLanguages\relax
520    \ifx\originalTeX\@undefined
521      \let\originalTeX\@empty
522    \else
523      \originalTeX
524    \fi}
```

\ldf@quit   This macro interrupts the processing of a language definition file.

```
525 \def\ldf@quit#1{%
526    \expandafter\main@language\expandafter{#1}%
527    \catcode'\@=\atcatcode \let\atcatcode\relax
528    \catcode'\==\eqcatcode \let\eqcatcode\relax
529    \endinput}
```

\ldf@finish   This macro takes one argument. It is the name of the language that was defined in the language definition file.
We load the local configuration file if one is present, we set the main language (taking into account that the argument might be a control sequence that needs to be expanded) and reset the category code of the @-sign.

```
530 \def\ldf@finish#1{%
531    \loadlocalcfg{#1}%
532    \bbl@afterlang
533    \let\bbl@afterlang\relax
534    \let\BabelModifiers\relax
535    \let\bbl@screset\relax
536    \expandafter\main@language\expandafter{#1}%
537    \catcode'\@=\atcatcode \let\atcatcode\relax
538    \catcode'\==\eqcatcode \let\eqcatcode\relax}
```

After the preamble of the document the commands \LdfInit, \ldf@quit and \ldf@finish are no longer needed. Therefore they are turned into warning messages in LATEX.

```
539 \@onlypreamble\LdfInit
540 \@onlypreamble\ldf@quit
541 \@onlypreamble\ldf@finish
```

\main@language   This command should be used in the various language definition files. It stores its
\bbl@main@language   argument in \bbl@main@language; to be used to switch to the correct language at the beginning of the document.

```
542 \def\main@language#1{%
543    \def\bbl@main@language{#1}%
544    \let\languagename\bbl@main@language
545    \bbl@patterns{\languagename}}
```

We also have to make sure that some code gets executed at the beginning of the document.

```
546 \AtBeginDocument{%
547    \expandafter\selectlanguage\expandafter{\bbl@main@language}}
```

7.4 Shorthands

\bbl@add@special   The macro \bbl@add@special is used to add a new character (or single character control sequence) to the macro \dospecials (and \@sanitize if LATEX is used).

50

To keep all changes local, we begin a new group. Then we redefine the macros `\do` and `\@makeother` to add themselves and the given character without expansion. To add the character to the macros, we expand the original macros with the additional character inside the redefinition of the macros. Because `\@sanitize` can be undefined, we put the definition inside a conditional.

```
548 \def\bbl@add@special#1{%
549   \begingroup
550     \def\do{\noexpand\do\noexpand}%
551     \def\@makeother{\noexpand\@makeother\noexpand}%
552   \edef\x{\endgroup
553     \def\noexpand\dospecials{\dospecials\do#1}%
554     \expandafter\ifx\csname @sanitize\endcsname\relax \else
555       \def\noexpand\@sanitize{\@sanitize\@makeother#1}%
556     \fi}%
557   \x}
```

The macro `\x` contains at this moment the following:
`\endgroup\def\dospecials{`*old contents* `\do`⟨*char*⟩`}`.
If `\@sanitize` is defined, it contains an additional definition of this macro. The last thing we have to do, is the expansion of `\x`. Then `\endgroup` is executed, which restores the old meaning of `\x`, `\do` and `\@makeother`. After the group is closed, the new definition of `\dospecials` (and `\@sanitize`) is assigned.

`\bbl@remove@special` The companion of the former macro is `\bbl@remove@special`. It is used to remove a character from the set macros `\dospecials` and `\@sanitize`.
To keep all changes local, we begin a new group. Then we define a help macro `\x`, which expands to empty if the characters match, otherwise it expands to its nonexpandable input. Because TeX inserts a `\relax`, if the corresponding `\else` or `\fi` is scanned before the comparison is evaluated, we provide a 'stop sign' which should expand to nothing.
With the help of this macro we define `\do` and `\make@other`.
The rest of the work is similar to `\bbl@add@special`.

```
558 \def\bbl@remove@special#1{%
559   \begingroup
560     \def\x##1##2{\ifnum`#1=`##2\noexpand\@empty
561                 \else\noexpand##1\noexpand##2\fi}%
562     \def\do{\x\do}%
563     \def\@makeother{\x\@makeother}%
564   \edef\x{\endgroup
565     \def\noexpand\dospecials{\dospecials}%
566     \expandafter\ifx\csname @sanitize\endcsname\relax \else
567       \def\noexpand\@sanitize{\@sanitize}%
568     \fi}%
569   \x}
```

`\initiate@active@char` A language definition file can call this macro to make a character active. This macro takes one argument, the character that is to be made active. When the character was already active this macro does nothing. Otherwise, this macro defines the control sequence `\normal@char`⟨*char*⟩ to expand to the character in its 'normal state' and it defines the active character to expand to `\normal@char`⟨*char*⟩ by default (⟨*char*⟩ being the character to be made active). Later its definition can be changed to expand to `\active@char`⟨*char*⟩ by calling `\bbl@activate{`⟨*char*⟩`}`. For example, to make the double quote character active one could have `\initiate@active@char{"}` in a language definition file. This defines " as

51

\active@prefix "\active@char" (where the first " is the character with its original catcode, when the shorthand is created, and \active@char" is a single token). In protected contexts, it expands to \protect " or \noexpand " (ie, with the original "); otherwise \active@char" is executed. This macro in turn expands to \normal@char" in "safe" contexts (eg, \label), but \user@active" in normal "unsafe" ones. The latter search a definition in the user, language and system levels, in this order, but if none is found, \normal@char" is used. However, a deactivated shorthand (with \bbl@deactivate is defined as \active@prefix "\normal@char".

The following macro is used to define shorthands in the three levels. It takes 4 arguments: the (string'ed) character, \<level>@group, <level>@active and <next-level>@active (except in system).

```
570 \def\bbl@active@def#1#2#3#4{%
571   \@namedef{#3#1}{%
572     \expandafter\ifx\csname#2@sh@#1@\endcsname\relax
573       \bbl@afterelse\bbl@sh@select#2#1{#3@arg#1}{#4#1}%
574     \else
575       \bbl@afterfi\csname#2@sh@#1@\endcsname
576     \fi}%
```

When there is also no current-level shorthand with an argument we will check whether there is a next-level defined shorthand for this active character.

```
577   \long\@namedef{#3@arg#1}##1{%
578     \expandafter\ifx\csname#2@sh@#1@\string##1@\endcsname\relax
579       \bbl@afterelse\csname#4#1\endcsname##1%
580     \else
581       \bbl@afterfi\csname#2@sh@#1@\string##1@\endcsname
582     \fi}}%
```

\initiate@active@char calls \@initiate@active@char with 3 arguments. All of them are the same character with different catcodes: active, other (string'ed) and the original one.

```
583 \def\initiate@active@char#1{%
584   \expandafter\ifx\csname active@char\string#1\endcsname\relax
585     \bbl@withactive
586       {\expandafter\@initiate@active@char\expandafter}#1\string#1#1%
587   \fi}
```

The very first thing to do is saving the original catcode and the original definition, even if not active, which is possible (undefined characters require a special treatement to avoid making them \relax).

```
588 \def\@initiate@active@char#1#2#3{%
589   \expandafter\edef\csname bbl@oricat@#2\endcsname{%
590     \catcode`#2=\the\catcode`#2\relax}%
591   \ifx#1\@undefined
592     \expandafter\edef\csname bbl@oridef@#2\endcsname{%
593       \let\noexpand#1\noexpand\@undefined}%
594   \else
595     \expandafter\let\csname bbl@oridef@@#2\endcsname#1%
596     \expandafter\edef\csname bbl@oridef@#2\endcsname{%
597       \let\noexpand#1%
598       \expandafter\noexpand\csname bbl@oridef@@#2\endcsname}%
599   \fi
```

If the character is already active we provide the default expansion under this shorthand mechanism. Otherwise we write a message in the transcript file, and

52

define `\normal@char`⟨*char*⟩ to expand to the character in its default state. If the character is mathematically active when babel is loaded (for example ') the normal expansion is somewhat different to avoid an infinite loop (but it does not prevent the loop if the mathcode is set to "8000 *a posteriori*).

```
600  \ifx#1#3\relax
601    \expandafter\let\csname normal@char#2\endcsname#3%
602  \else
603    \bbl@info{Making #2 an active character}%
604    \ifnum\mathcode'#2="8000
605      \@namedef{normal@char#2}{%
606        \textormath{#3}{\csname bbl@oridef@@#2\endcsname}}%
607    \else
608      \@namedef{normal@char#2}{#3}%
609    \fi
```

To prevent problems with the loading of other packages after babel we reset the catcode of the character to the original one at the end of the package and of each language file (except with KeepShorthandsActive). It is re-activate again at `\begin{document}`. We also need to make sure that the shorthands are active during the processing of the `.aux` file. Otherwise some citations may give unexpected results in the printout when a shorthand was used in the optional argument of `\bibitem` for example. . Then we make it active (not strictly necessary, but done for backward compatibility).

```
610      \bbl@restoreactive{#2}%
611      \AtBeginDocument{%
612        \catcode'#2\active
613        \if@filesw
614          \immediate\write\@mainaux{\catcode'\string#2\active}%
615        \fi}%
616      \expandafter\bbl@add@special\csname#2\endcsname
617      \catcode'#2\active
618  \fi
```

Now we have set `\normal@char`⟨*char*⟩, we must define `\active@char`⟨*char*⟩, to be executed when the character is activated. We define the first level expansion of `\active@char`⟨*char*⟩ to check the status of the @safe@actives flag. If it is set to true we expand to the 'normal' version of this character, otherwise we call `\user@active`⟨*char*⟩ to start the search of a definition in the user, language and system levels (or eventually normal@char⟨*char*⟩).

```
619  \let\bbl@tempa\@firstoftwo
620  \if\string^#2%
621    \def\bbl@tempa{\noexpand\textormath}%
622  \else
623    \ifx\bbl@mathnormal\@undefined\else
624      \let\bbl@tempa\bbl@mathnormal
625    \fi
626  \fi
627  \expandafter\edef\csname active@char#2\endcsname{%
628    \bbl@tempa
629      {\noexpand\if@safe@actives
630        \noexpand\expandafter
631        \expandafter\noexpand\csname normal@char#2\endcsname
632      \noexpand\else
633        \noexpand\expandafter
634        \expandafter\noexpand\csname bbl@doactive#2\endcsname
```

```
635        \noexpand\fi}%
636      {\expandafter\noexpand\csname normal@char#2\endcsname}}%
637    \bbl@csarg\edef{doactive#2}{%
638      \expandafter\noexpand\csname user@active#2\endcsname}%
```

We now define the default values which the shorthand is set to when activated or deactivated. It is set to the deactivated form (globally), so that the character expands to

$$\text{\active@prefix } \langle char\rangle \text{ \normal@char} \langle char\rangle$$

(where \active@char⟨*char*⟩ is *one* control sequence!).

```
639    \bbl@csarg\edef{active@#2}{%
640      \noexpand\active@prefix\noexpand#1%
641      \expandafter\noexpand\csname active@char#2\endcsname}%
642    \bbl@csarg\edef{normal@#2}{%
643      \noexpand\active@prefix\noexpand#1%
644      \expandafter\noexpand\csname normal@char#2\endcsname}%
645    \expandafter\let\expandafter#1\csname bbl@normal@#2\endcsname
```

The next level of the code checks whether a user has defined a shorthand for himself with this character. First we check for a single character shorthand. If that doesn't exist we check for a shorthand with an argument.

```
646      \bbl@active@def#2\user@group{user@active}{language@active}%
647      \bbl@active@def#2\language@group{language@active}{system@active}%
648      \bbl@active@def#2\system@group{system@active}{normal@char}%
```

In order to do the right thing when a shorthand with an argument is used by itself at the end of the line we provide a definition for the case of an empty argument. For that case we let the shorthand character expand to its non-active self. Also, When a shorthand combination such as '' ends up in a heading TeX would see \protect'\protect'. To prevent this from happening a couple of shorthand needs to be defined at user level.

```
649      \expandafter\edef\csname\user@group @sh@#2@@\endcsname
650        {\expandafter\noexpand\csname normal@char#2\endcsname}%
651      \expandafter\edef\csname\user@group @sh@#2@\string\protect@\endcsname
652        {\expandafter\noexpand\csname user@active#2\endcsname}%
```

Finally, a couple of special cases are taken care of. (1) If we are making the right quote (') active we need to change \pr@m@s as well. Also, make sure that a single ' in math mode 'does the right thing'. (2) If we are using the caret (^) as a shorthand character special care should be taken to make sure math still works. Therefore an extra level of expansion is introduced with a check for math mode on the upper level.

```
653      \if\string'#2%
654        \let\prim@s\bbl@prim@s
655        \let\active@math@prime#1%
656      \fi
657      \bbl@usehooks{initiateactive}{{#1}{#2}{#3}}}
```

The following package options control the behaviour of shorthands in math mode.

```
658 ⟨⟨∗More package options⟩⟩ ≡
659 \DeclareOption{math=active}{}
660 \DeclareOption{math=normal}{\def\bbl@mathnormal{\noexpand\textormath}}
661 ⟨⟨/More package options⟩⟩
```

Initiating a shorthand makes active the char. That is not strictly necessary but it is still done for backward compatibility. So we need to restore the original catcode at the end of package *and* and the end of the `ldf`.

```
662 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{KeepShorthandsActive}%
663   {\let\bbl@restoreactive\@gobble}%
664   {\def\bbl@restoreactive#1{%
665      \edef\bbl@tempa{%
666         \noexpand\AfterBabelLanguage\noexpand\CurrentOption
667           {\catcode'#1=\the\catcode'#1\relax}%
668         \noexpand\AtEndOfPackage{\catcode'#1=\the\catcode'#1\relax}}%
669      \bbl@tempa}%
670   \AtEndOfPackage{\let\bbl@restoreactive\@gobble}}
```

`\bbl@sh@select`   This command helps the shorthand supporting macros to select how to proceed. Note that this macro needs to be expandable as do all the shorthand macros in order for them to work in expansion-only environments such as the argument of `\hyphenation`.
This macro expects the name of a group of shorthands in its first argument and a shorthand character in its second argument. It will expand to either `\bbl@firstcs` or `\bbl@scndcs`. Hence two more arguments need to follow it.

```
671 \def\bbl@sh@select#1#2{%
672   \expandafter\ifx\csname#1@sh@#2@sel\endcsname\relax
673     \bbl@afterelse\bbl@scndcs
674   \else
675     \bbl@afterfi\csname#1@sh@#2@sel\endcsname
676   \fi}
```

`\active@prefix`   The command `\active@prefix` which is used in the expansion of active characters has a function similar to `\OT1-cmd` in that it `\protect`s the active character whenever `\protect` is *not* `\@typeset@protect`.

```
677 \def\active@prefix#1{%
678   \ifx\protect\@typeset@protect
679   \else
```

When `\protect` is set to `\@unexpandable@protect` we make sure that the active character is als *not* expanded by inserting `\noexpand` in front of it. The `\@gobble` is needed to remove a token such as `\activechar:` (when the double colon was the active character to be dealt with).

```
680      \ifx\protect\@unexpandable@protect
681        \noexpand#1%
682      \else
683        \protect#1%
684      \fi
685      \expandafter\@gobble
686   \fi}
```

`\if@safe@actives`   In some circumstances it is necessary to be able to change the expansion of an active character on the fly. For this purpose the switch `@safe@actives` is available. The setting of this switch should be checked in the first level expansion of `\active@char⟨char⟩`.

```
687 \newif\if@safe@actives
688 \@safe@activesfalse
```

55

When the output routine kicks in while the active characters were made "safe" this must be undone in the headers to prevent unexpected typeset results. For this situation we define a command to make them "unsafe" again.

```
689 \def\bbl@restore@actives{\if@safe@actives\@safe@activesfalse\fi}
```

Both macros take one argument, like \initiate@active@char. The macro is used to change the definition of an active character to expand to \active@char⟨*char*⟩ in the case of \bbl@activate, or \normal@char⟨*char*⟩ in the case of \bbl@deactivate.

```
690 \def\bbl@activate#1{%
691   \bbl@withactive{\expandafter\let\expandafter}#1%
692     \csname bbl@active@\string#1\endcsname}
693 \def\bbl@deactivate#1{%
694   \bbl@withactive{\expandafter\let\expandafter}#1%
695     \csname bbl@normal@\string#1\endcsname}
```

These macros have two arguments. They use one of their arguments to build a control sequence from.

```
696 \def\bbl@firstcs#1#2{\csname#1\endcsname}
697 \def\bbl@scndcs#1#2{\csname#2\endcsname}
```

The command \declare@shorthand is used to declare a shorthand on a certain level. It takes three arguments:

1. a name for the collection of shorthands, i.e. 'system', or 'dutch';

2. the character (sequence) that makes up the shorthand, i.e. ~ or "a;

3. the code to be executed when the shorthand is encountered.

```
698 \def\declare@shorthand#1#2{\@decl@short{#1}#2\@nil}
699 \def\@decl@short#1#2#3\@nil#4{%
700   \def\bbl@tempa{#3}%
701   \ifx\bbl@tempa\@empty
702     \expandafter\let\csname #1@sh@\string#2@sel\endcsname\bbl@scndcs
703     \@ifundefined{#1@sh@\string#2@}{}%
704       {\def\bbl@tempa{#4}%
705        \expandafter\ifx\csname#1@sh@\string#2@\endcsname\bbl@tempa
706        \else
707          \bbl@info
708            {Redefining #1 shorthand \string#2\\%
709             in language \CurrentOption}%
710        \fi}%
711     \@namedef{#1@sh@\string#2@}{#4}%
712   \else
713     \expandafter\let\csname #1@sh@\string#2@sel\endcsname\bbl@firstcs
714     \@ifundefined{#1@sh@\string#2@\string#3@}{}%
715       {\def\bbl@tempa{#4}%
716        \expandafter\ifx\csname#1@sh@\string#2@\string#3@\endcsname\bbl@tempa
717        \else
718          \bbl@info
719            {Redefining #1 shorthand \string#2\string#3\\%
720             in language \CurrentOption}%
721        \fi}%
722     \@namedef{#1@sh@\string#2@\string#3@}{#4}%
723   \fi}
```

\textormath Some of the shorthands that will be declared by the language definition files have to be usable in both text and mathmode. To achieve this the helper macro \textormath is provided.

```
724 \def\textormath{%
725   \ifmmode
726     \expandafter\@secondoftwo
727   \else
728     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
729   \fi}
```

\user@group
\language@group
\system@group The current concept of 'shorthands' supports three levels or groups of shorthands. For each level the name of the level or group is stored in a macro. The default is to have a user group; use language group 'english' and have a system group called 'system'.

```
730 \def\user@group{user}
731 \def\language@group{english}
732 \def\system@group{system}
```

\useshorthands This is the user level command to tell LaTeX that user level shorthands will be used in the document. It takes one argument, the character that starts a shorthand. First note that this is user level, and then initialize and activate the character for use as a shorthand character (ie, it's active in the preamble). Languages can deactivate shorthands, so a starred version is also provided which activates them always after the language has been switched.

```
733 \def\useshorthands{%
734   \@ifstar\bbl@usesh@s{\bbl@usesh@x{}}}
735 \def\bbl@usesh@s#1{%
736   \bbl@usesh@x
737     {\AddBabelHook{babel-sh-\string#1}{afterextras}{\bbl@activate{#1}}}%
738     {#1}}
739 \def\bbl@usesh@x#1#2{%
740   \bbl@ifshorthand{#2}%
741     {\def\user@group{user}%
742      \initiate@active@char{#2}%
743      #1%
744      \bbl@activate{#2}}%
745     {\bbl@error
746        {Cannot declare a shorthand turned off (\string#2)}
747        {Sorry, but you cannot use shorthands which have been\\%
748         turned off in the package options}}}
```

\defineshorthand Currently we only support two groups of user level shorthands, named internally user and user@<lang> (language-dependent user shorthands). By default, only the first one is taken into account, but if the former is also used (in the optional argument of \defineshorthand) a new level is inserted for it (user@generic, done by \bbl@set@user@generic); we make also sure {} and \protect are taken into account in this new top level.

```
749 \def\user@language@group{user@\language@group}
750 \def\bbl@set@user@generic#1#2{%
751   \@ifundefined{user@generic@active#1}%
752     {\bbl@active@def#1\user@language@group{user@active}{user@generic@active}%
753      \bbl@active@def#1\user@group{user@generic@active}{language@active}%
754      \expandafter\edef\csname#2@sh@#1@@\endcsname{%
755        \expandafter\noexpand\csname normal@char#1\endcsname}%
```

```
756        \expandafter\edef\csname#2@sh@#1@\string\protect@\endcsname{%
757          \expandafter\noexpand\csname user@active#1\endcsname}}%
758    \@empty}
759 \newcommand\defineshorthand[3][user]{%
760    \edef\bbl@tempa{\zap@space#1 \@empty}%
761    \bbl@for\bbl@tempb\bbl@tempa{%
762      \if*\expandafter\@car\bbl@tempb\@nil
763        \edef\bbl@tempb{user@\expandafter\@gobble\bbl@tempb}%
764        \@expandtwoargs
765          \bbl@set@user@generic{\expandafter\string\@car#2\@nil}\bbl@tempb
766      \fi
767      \declare@shorthand{\bbl@tempb}{#2}{#3}}}
```

\languageshorthands A user level command to change the language from which shorthands are used. Unfortunately, babel currently does not keep track of defined groups, and therefore there is no way to catch a possible change in casing.

```
768 \def\languageshorthands#1{\def\language@group{#1}}
```

\aliasshorthand First the new shorthand needs to be initialized,

```
769 \def\aliasshorthand#1#2{%
770    \bbl@ifshorthand{#2}%
771      {\expandafter\ifx\csname active@char\string#2\endcsname\relax
772        \ifx\document\@notprerr
773          \@notshorthand{#2}%
774        \else
775          \initiate@active@char{#2}%
```

Then, we define the new shorthand in terms of the original one, but note with \aliasshorthands{"}{/} is \active@prefix /\active@char/, so we still need to let the lattest to \active@char".

```
776          \expandafter\let\csname active@char\string#2\expandafter\endcsname
777            \csname active@char\string#1\endcsname
778          \expandafter\let\csname normal@char\string#2\expandafter\endcsname
779            \csname normal@char\string#1\endcsname
780          \bbl@activate{#2}%
781        \fi
782      \fi}%
783      {\bbl@error
784        {Cannot declare a shorthand turned off (\string#2)}
785        {Sorry, but you cannot use shorthands which have been\\%
786         turned off in the package options}}}
```

\@notshorthand

```
787 \def\@notshorthand#1{%
788    \bbl@error{%
789      The character '\string #1' should be made a shorthand character;\\%
790      add the command \string\useshorthands\string{#1\string} to
791      the preamble.\\%
792      I will ignore your instruction}%
793    {You may proceed, but expect unexpected results}}
```

\shorthandon The first level definition of these macros just passes the argument on to
\shorthandoff \bbl@switch@sh, adding \@nil at the end to denote the end of the list of characters.

```
794 \newcommand*\shorthandon[1]{\bbl@switch@sh\@ne#1\@nnil}
795 \DeclareRobustCommand*\shorthandoff{%
```

```
796    \@ifstar{\bbl@shorthandoff\tw@}{\bbl@shorthandoff\z@}}
797 \def\bbl@shorthandoff#1#2{\bbl@switch@sh#1#2\@nnil}
```

\bbl@switch@sh The macro \bbl@switch@sh takes the list of characters apart one by one and
subsequently switches the category code of the shorthand character according to
the first argument of \bbl@switch@sh.

But before any of this switching takes place we make sure that the character we
are dealing with is known as a shorthand character. If it is, a macro such as
\active@char" should exist.

Switching off and on is easy – we just set the category code to 'other' (12) and
\active. With the starred version, the original catcode and the original definition,
saved in @initiate@active@char, are restored.

```
798 \def\bbl@switch@sh#1#2{%
799   \ifx#2\@nnil\else
800     \@ifundefined{bbl@active@\string#2}%
801       {\bbl@error
802         {I cannot switch '\string#2' on or off--not a shorthand}%
803         {This character is not a shorthand. Maybe you made\\%
804          a typing mistake? I will ignore your instruction}}%
805       {\ifcase#1%
806         \catcode'#212\relax
807        \or
808         \catcode'#2\active
809        \or
810         \csname bbl@oricat@\string#2\endcsname
811         \csname bbl@oridef@\string#2\endcsname
812        \fi}%
813     \bbl@afterfi\bbl@switch@sh#1%
814   \fi}
```

Note the value is that at the expansion time, eg, in the preample shorhands are
usually deactivated.

```
815 \def\babelshorthand{\active@prefix\babelshorthand\bbl@putsh}
816 \def\bbl@putsh#1{%
817   \@ifundefined{bbl@active@\string#1}%
818     {\bbl@putsh@i#1\@empty\@nnil}%
819     {\csname bbl@active@\string#1\endcsname}}
820 \def\bbl@putsh@i#1#2\@nnil{%
821   \csname\languagename @sh@\string#1@%
822     \ifx\@empty#2\else\string#2@\fi\endcsname}
823 \ifx\bbl@opt@shorthands\@nnil\else
824   \let\bbl@s@initiate@active@char\initiate@active@char
825   \def\initiate@active@char#1{%
826     \bbl@ifshorthand{#1}{\bbl@s@initiate@active@char{#1}}{}}
827   \let\bbl@s@switch@sh\bbl@switch@sh
828   \def\bbl@switch@sh#1#2{%
829     \ifx#2\@nnil\else
830       \bbl@afterfi
831       \bbl@ifshorthand{#2}{\bbl@s@switch@sh#1{#2}}{\bbl@switch@sh#1}%
832     \fi}
833   \let\bbl@s@activate\bbl@activate
834   \def\bbl@activate#1{%
835     \bbl@ifshorthand{#1}{\bbl@s@activate{#1}}{}}
836   \let\bbl@s@deactivate\bbl@deactivate
837   \def\bbl@deactivate#1{%
```

```
838        \bbl@ifshorthand{#1}{\bbl@s@deactivate{#1}}{}}
839 \fi
```

\bbl@prim@s
\bbl@pr@m@s

One of the internal macros that are involved in substituting \prime for each right quote in mathmode is \prim@s. This checks if the next character is a right quote. When the right quote is active, the definition of this macro needs to be adapted to look also for an active right quote; the hat could be active, too.

```
840 \def\bbl@prim@s{%
841   \prime\futurelet\@let@token\bbl@pr@m@s}
842 \def\bbl@if@primes#1#2{%
843   \ifx#1\@let@token
844     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
845   \else\ifx#2\@let@token
846     \bbl@afterelse\expandafter\@firstoftwo
847   \else
848     \bbl@afterfi\expandafter\@secondoftwo
849   \fi\fi}
850 \begingroup
851   \catcode'\^=7  \catcode'\*=\active  \lccode'\*='\^
852   \catcode'\'=12 \catcode'\"=\active  \lccode'\"='\'
853   \lowercase{%
854     \gdef\bbl@pr@m@s{%
855       \bbl@if@primes"'%
856         \pr@@@s
857         {\bbl@if@primes*^\pr@@@t\egroup}}}
858 \endgroup
```

Usually the ~ is active and expands to \penalty\@M_. When it is written to the .aux file it is written expanded. To prevent that and to be able to use the character ~ as a start character for a shorthand, it is redefined here as a one character shorthand on system level. The system declaration is in most cases redundant (when ~ is still a non-break space), and in some cases is inconvenient (if ~ has been redefined); however, for backward compatibility it is maintained (some existing documents may rely on the babel value).

```
859 \initiate@active@char{~}
860 \declare@shorthand{system}{~}{\leavevmode\nobreak\ }
861 \bbl@activate{~}
```

\OT1dqpos
\T1dqpos

The position of the double quote character is different for the OT1 and T1 encodings. It will later be selected using the \f@encoding macro. Therefore we define two macros here to store the position of the character in these encodings.

```
862 \expandafter\def\csname OT1dqpos\endcsname{127}
863 \expandafter\def\csname T1dqpos\endcsname{4}
```

When the macro \f@encoding is undefined (as it is in plain TEX) we define it here to expand to OT1

```
864 \ifx\f@encoding\@undefined
865   \def\f@encoding{OT1}
866 \fi
```

7.5 Language attributes

Language attributes provide a means to give the user control over which features of the language definition files he wants to enable.

\languageattribute   The macro \languageattribute checks whether its arguments are valid and then
                      activates the selected language attribute. First check whether the language is
                      known, and then process each attribute in the list.

```
867 \newcommand\languageattribute[2]{%
868   \def\bbl@tempc{#1}%
869   \bbl@fixname\bbl@tempc
870   \bbl@iflanguage\bbl@tempc{%
871     \bbl@loopx\bbl@attr{#2}{%
```

We want to make sure that each attribute is selected only once; therefore we store
the already selected attributes in \bbl@known@attribs. When that control
sequence is not yet defined this attribute is certainly not selected before.

```
872     \ifx\bbl@known@attribs\@undefined
873       \in@false
874     \else
```

Now we need to see if the attribute occurs in the list of already selected attributes.

```
875       \@expandtwoargs\in@{,\bbl@tempc-\bbl@attr,}{,\bbl@known@attribs,}%
876     \fi
```

When the attribute was in the list we issue a warning; this might not be the users
intention.

```
877     \ifin@
878       \bbl@warning{%
879         You have more than once selected the attribute '\bbl@attr'\\%
880         for language #1}%
881     \else
```

When we end up here the attribute is not selected before. So, we add it to the list
of selected attributes and execute the associated TEX-code.

```
882       \edef\bbl@tempa{%
883         \noexpand\bbl@add@list
884         \noexpand\bbl@known@attribs{\bbl@tempc-\bbl@attr}}%
885       \bbl@tempa
886       \edef\bbl@tempa{\bbl@tempc-\bbl@attr}%
887       \expandafter\bbl@ifknown@ttrib\expandafter{\bbl@tempa}\bbl@attributes%
888       {\csname\bbl@tempc @attr@\bbl@attr\endcsname}%
889       {\@attrerr{\bbl@tempc}{\bbl@attr}}%
890     \fi}}}
```

This command should only be used in the preamble of a document.

```
891 \@onlypreamble\languageattribute
```

The error text to be issued when an unknown attribute is selected.

```
892 \newcommand*{\@attrerr}[2]{%
893   \bbl@error
894     {The attribute #2 is unknown for language #1.}%
895     {Your command will be ignored, type <return> to proceed}}
```

\bbl@declare@ttribute   This command adds the new language/attribute combination to the list of known
                         attributes.
                         Then it defines a control sequence to be executed when the attribute is used in a
                         document. The result of this should be that the macro \extras... for the current
                         language is extended, otherwise the attribute will not work as its code is removed
                         from memory at \begin{document}.

```
896 \def\bbl@declare@ttribute#1#2#3{%
897   \@expandtwoargs\in@{,#2,}{,\BabelModifiers,}%
```

```
898    \ifin@
899      \AfterBabelLanguage{#1}{\languageattribute{#1}{#2}}%
900    \fi
901    \bbl@add@list\bbl@attributes{#1-#2}%
902    \expandafter\def\csname#1@attr@#2\endcsname{#3}}
```

\bbl@ifattributeset This internal macro has 4 arguments. It can be used to interpret TeX code based
on whether a certain attribute was set. This command should appear inside the
argument to \AtBeginDocument because the attributes are set in the document
preamble, *after* babel is loaded.
The first argument is the language, the second argument the attribute being
checked, and the third and fourth arguments are the true and false clauses.

```
903 \def\bbl@ifattributeset#1#2#3#4{%
```

First we need to find out if any attributes were set; if not we're done.

```
904    \ifx\bbl@known@attribs\@undefined
905      \in@false
906    \else
```

The we need to check the list of known attributes.

```
907      \@expandtwoargs\in@{,#1-#2,}{,\bbl@known@attribs,}%
908    \fi
```

When we're this far \ifin@ has a value indicating if the attribute in question was
set or not. Just to be safe the code to be executed is 'thrown over the \fi'.

```
909    \ifin@
910      \bbl@afterelse#3%
911    \else
912      \bbl@afterfi#4%
913    \fi
914    }
```

\bbl@add@list This internal macro adds its second argument to a comma separated list in its first
argument. When the list is not defined yet (or empty), it will be initiated

```
915 \def\bbl@add@list#1#2{%
916    \ifx#1\@undefined
917      \def#1{#2}%
918    \else
919      \ifx#1\@empty
920        \def#1{#2}%
921      \else
922        \edef#1{#1,#2}%
923      \fi
924    \fi
925    }
```

\bbl@ifknown@ttrib An internal macro to check whether a given language/attribute is known. The
macro takes 4 arguments, the language/attribute, the attribute list, the TeX-code
to be executed when the attribute is known and the TeX-code to be executed
otherwise.

```
926 \def\bbl@ifknown@ttrib#1#2{%
```

We first assume the attribute is unknown.

```
927    \let\bbl@tempa\@secondoftwo
```

Then we loop over the list of known attributes, trying to find a match.

```
928    \bbl@loopx\bbl@tempb{#2}{%
```

```
929    \expandafter\in@\expandafter{\expandafter,\bbl@tempb,}{,#1,}%
930    \ifin@
```

When a match is found the definition of `\bbl@tempa` is changed.

```
931      \let\bbl@tempa\@firstoftwo
932    \else
933    \fi}%
```

Finally we execute `\bbl@tempa`.

```
934    \bbl@tempa
935 }
```

\bbl@clear@ttribs   This macro removes all the attribute code from LATEX's memory at
`\begin{document}` time (if any is present).

```
936 \def\bbl@clear@ttribs{%
937    \ifx\bbl@attributes\@undefined\else
938      \bbl@loopx\bbl@tempa{\bbl@attributes}{%
939        \expandafter\bbl@clear@ttrib\bbl@tempa.
940        }%
941      \let\bbl@attributes\@undefined
942    \fi
943    }
944 \def\bbl@clear@ttrib#1-#2.{%
945    \expandafter\let\csname#1@attr@#2\endcsname\@undefined}
946 \AtBeginDocument{\bbl@clear@ttribs}
```

7.6   Support for saving macro definitions

To save the meaning of control sequences using `\babel@save`, we use temporary
control sequences. To save hash table entries for these control sequences, we
don't use the name of the control sequence to be saved to construct the temporary
name. Instead we simply use the value of a counter, which is reset to zero each
time we begin to save new values. This works well because we release the saved
meanings before we begin to save a new set of control sequence meanings (see
`\selectlanguage` and `\originalTeX`). Note undefined macros are not undefined
any more when saved – they are `\relax`'ed.

\babel@savecnt   The initialization of a new save cycle: reset the counter to zero.
\babel@beginsave   `947 \def\babel@beginsave{\babel@savecnt\z@}`

Before it's forgotten, allocate the counter and initialize all.

```
948 \newcount\babel@savecnt
949 \babel@beginsave
```

\babel@save   The macro `\babel@save`⟨*csname*⟩ saves the current meaning of the control
sequence ⟨*csname*⟩ to `\originalTeX`[28]. To do this, we let the current meaning to a
temporary control sequence, the restore commands are appended to
`\originalTeX` and the counter is incremented.

```
950 \def\babel@save#1{%
951    \expandafter\let\csname babel@\number\babel@savecnt\endcsname#1\relax
952    \begingroup
953      \toks@\expandafter{\originalTeX\let#1=}%
954      \edef\x{\endgroup
955        \def\noexpand\originalTeX{\the\toks@ \expandafter\noexpand
```

---

[28]`\originalTeX` has to be expandable, i.e. you shouldn't let it to `\relax`.

63

\csname babel@\number\babel@savecnt\endcsname\relax}}%
957   \x
958   \advance\babel@savecnt\@ne}

\babel@savevariable The macro \babel@savevariable⟨*variable*⟩ saves the value of the variable.
⟨*variable*⟩ can be anything allowed after the \the primitive.

959 \def\babel@savevariable#1{\begingroup
960   \toks@\expandafter{\originalTeX #1=}%
961   \edef\x{\endgroup
962   \def\noexpand\originalTeX{\the\toks@ \the#1\relax}}%
963   \x}

\bbl@frenchspacing   Some languages need to have \frenchspacing in effect. Others don't want that.
\bbl@nonfrenchspacing The command \bbl@frenchspacing switches it on when it isn't already in effect
and \bbl@nonfrenchspacing switches it off if necessary.

964 \def\bbl@frenchspacing{%
965   \ifnum\the\sfcode`\.=\@m
966   \let\bbl@nonfrenchspacing\relax
967   \else
968   \frenchspacing
969   \let\bbl@nonfrenchspacing\nonfrenchspacing
970   \fi}
971 \let\bbl@nonfrenchspacing\nonfrenchspacing

7.7   Short tags

\babeltags This macro is straightforward. After zapping spaces, we loop over the list and
define the macros \text⟨*tag*⟩ and \⟨*tag*⟩. Definitions are first expanded so that
they don't contain \csname but the actual macro.

972 \def\babeltags#1{%
973   \edef\bbl@tempa{\zap@space#1 \@empty}%
974   \def\bbl@tempb##1=##2\@@{%
975   \edef\bbl@tempc{%
976   \noexpand\newcommand
977   \expandafter\noexpand\csname ##1\endcsname{%
978   \noexpand\protect
979   \expandafter\noexpand\csname otherlanguage*\endcsname{##2}}%
980   \noexpand\newcommand
981   \expandafter\noexpand\csname text##1\endcsname{%
982   \noexpand\foreignlanguage{##2}}}%
983   \bbl@tempc}%
984   \bbl@for\bbl@tempa\bbl@tempa{%
985   \expandafter\bbl@tempb\bbl@tempa\@@}}

7.8   Hyphens

\babelhyphenation This macro saves hyphenation exceptions. Two macros are used to store them:
\bbl@hyphenation@ for the global ones and \bbl@hyphenation<lang> for
language ones. See \bbl@patterns above for further details. We make sure there
is a space between words when multiple commands are used.

986 \@onlypreamble\babelhyphenation
987 \AtEndOfPackage{%
988   \newcommand\babelhyphenation[2][\@empty]{%
989   \ifx\bbl@hyphenation@\relax

```
990        \let\bbl@hyphenation@\@empty
991      \fi
992      \ifx\bbl@hyphlist\@empty\else
993        \bbl@warning{%
994          You must not intermingle \string\selectlanguage\space and\\%
995          \string\babelhyphenation\space or some exceptions will not\\%
996          be taken into account. Reported}%
997      \fi
998      \ifx\@empty#1%
999        \protected@edef\bbl@hyphenation@{\bbl@hyphenation@\space#2}%
1000     \else
1001       \edef\bbl@tempb{\zap@space#1 \@empty}%
1002       \bbl@for\bbl@tempa\bbl@tempb{%
1003         \bbl@fixname\bbl@tempa
1004         \bbl@iflanguage\bbl@tempa{%
1005           \bbl@csarg\protected@edef{hyphenation@\bbl@tempa}{%
1006             \@ifundefined{bbl@hyphenation@\bbl@tempa}%
1007               \@empty
1008               {\csname bbl@hyphenation@\bbl@tempa\endcsname\space}%
1009             #2}}}%
1010     \fi}}
```

\bbl@allowhyphens This macro makes hyphenation possible. Basically its definition is nothing more
than \nobreak \hskip 0pt plus 0pt[29].

```
1011 \def\bbl@allowhyphens{\ifvmode\else\nobreak\hskip\z@skip\fi}
1012 \def\bbl@t@one{T1}
1013 \def\allowhyphens{\ifx\cf@encoding\bbl@t@one\else\bbl@allowhyphens\fi}
```

\babelhyphen Macros to insert common hyphens. Note the space before @ in \babelhyphen.
Instead of protecting it with \DeclareRobustCommand, which could insert a
\relax, we use the same procedure as shorthands.

```
1014 \newcommand\babelnullhyphen{\char\hyphenchar\font}
1015 \def\babelhyphen{\active@prefix\babelhyphen\bbl@hyphen}
1016 \def\bbl@hyphen{%
1017   \@ifstar{\bbl@hyphen@i @}{\bbl@hyphen@i\@empty}}
1018 \def\bbl@hyphen@i#1#2{%
1019   \@ifundefined{bbl@hy@#1#2\@empty}%
1020     {\csname bbl@#1usehyphen\endcsname{\discretionary{#2}{}{#2}}}%
1021     {\csname bbl@hy@#1#2\@empty\endcsname}}
```

The following two commands are used to wrap the "hyphen" and set the behaviour
of the rest of the word – the version with a single @ is used when further
hyphenation is allowed, while that with @@ if no more hyphen are allowed. In both
cases, if the hyphen is preceded by a positive space, breaking after the hyphen is
disallowed.

There should not be a discretionaty after a hyphen at the beginning of a word, so it
is prevented if preceded by a skip. Unfortunately, this does handle cases like
"(-suffix)". \nobreak is always preceded by \leavevmode, in case the shorthand
starts a paragraph.

```
1022 \def\bbl@usehyphen#1{%
1023   \leavevmode
1024   \ifdim\lastskip>\z@\mbox{#1}\nobreak\else\nobreak#1\fi
1025   \hskip\z@skip}
```

---

[29]TeX begins and ends a word for hyphenation at a glue node. The penalty prevents a linebreak at this
glue node.

```
1026 \def\bbl@@usehyphen#1{%
1027   \leavevmode\ifdim\lastskip>\z@\mbox{#1}\else#1\fi}
```

The following macro inserts the hyphen char.

```
1028 \def\bbl@hyphenchar{%
1029   \ifnum\hyphenchar\font=\m@ne
1030     \babelnullhyphen
1031   \else
1032     \char\hyphenchar\font
1033   \fi}
```

Finally, we define the hyphen "types". Their names will not change, so you may use them in `ldf`'s.

```
1034 \def\bbl@hy@soft{\bbl@usehyphen{\discretionary{\bbl@hyphenchar}{}{}}}
1035 \def\bbl@hy@@soft{\bbl@@usehyphen{\discretionary{\bbl@hyphenchar}{}{}}}
1036 \def\bbl@hy@hard{\bbl@usehyphen\bbl@hyphenchar}
1037 \def\bbl@hy@@hard{\bbl@@usehyphen\bbl@hyphenchar}
1038 \def\bbl@hy@nobreak{\bbl@usehyphen{\mbox{\bbl@hyphenchar}\nobreak}}
1039 \def\bbl@hy@@nobreak{\mbox{\bbl@hyphenchar}}
1040 \def\bbl@hy@repeat{%
1041   \bbl@usehyphen{%
1042     \discretionary{\bbl@hyphenchar}{\bbl@hyphenchar}{\bbl@hyphenchar}%
1043     \nobreak}}
1044 \def\bbl@hy@@repeat{%
1045   \bbl@@usehyphen{%
1046     \discretionary{\bbl@hyphenchar}{\bbl@hyphenchar}{\bbl@hyphenchar}}}
1047 \def\bbl@hy@empty{\hskip\z@skip}
1048 \def\bbl@hy@@empty{\discretionary{}{}{}}
```

\bbl@disc For some languages the macro `\bbl@disc` is used to ease the insertion of discretionaries for letters that behave 'abnormally' at a breakpoint.

```
1049 \def\bbl@disc#1#2{\nobreak\discretionary{#2-}{}{#1}\bbl@allowhyphens}
```

7.9   Multiencoding strings

The aim following commands is to provide a commom interface for strings in several encodings. They also contains several hooks which can be ued by luatex and xetex. The code is organized here with pseudo-guards, so we start with the basic commands.

Tools   But first, a couple of tools. The first one makes global a local variable. This is not the best solution, but it works.

```
1050 \def\bbl@toglobal#1{\global\let#1#1}
1051 \def\bbl@recatcode#1{%
1052   \@tempcnta="7F
1053   \def\bbl@tempa{%
1054     \ifnum\@tempcnta>"FF\else
1055       \catcode\@tempcnta=#1\relax
1056       \advance\@tempcnta\@ne
1057       \expandafter\bbl@tempa
1058     \fi}%
1059   \bbl@tempa}
```

The second one. We need to patch `\@uclclist`, but it is done once and only if `\SetCase` is used or if strings are encoded. The code is far from satisfactory for several reasons, including the fact `\@uclclist` is not a list any more. Therefore a

package option is added to ignore it. Instead of gobbling the macro getting the next two elements (usually `\reserved@a`), we pass it as argument to `\bbl@uclc`. The parser is restarted inside `\⟨lang⟩@bbl@uclc` because we do not know how many expansions are necessary (depends on whether strings are encoded). The last part is tricky – when uppercasing, we have:

```
% \let\bbl@tolower\@empty\bbl@toupper\@empty
%
```

and starts over (and similarly when lowercasing).

```
1060 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{nocase}%
1061   {\let\bbl@patchuclc\relax}%
1062   {\def\bbl@patchuclc{%
1063     \global\let\bbl@patchuclc\relax
1064     \g@addto@macro\@uclclist{\reserved@b{\reserved@b\bbl@uclc}}%
1065     \gdef\bbl@uclc##1{%
1066       \let\bbl@encoded\bbl@encoded@uclc
1067       \@ifundefined{\languagename @bbl@uclc}% and resumes it
1068         {##1}%
1069         {\let\bbl@tempa##1\relax % Used by LANG@bbl@uclc
1070          \csname\languagename @bbl@uclc\endcsname}%
1071       {\bbl@tolower\@empty}{\bbl@toupper\@empty}}%
1072     \gdef\bbl@tolower{\csname\languagename @bbl@lc\endcsname}%
1073     \gdef\bbl@toupper{\csname\languagename @bbl@uc\endcsname}}}
```

```
1074 ⟨⟨∗More package options⟩⟩ ≡
1075 \DeclareOption{nocase}{}
1076 ⟨⟨/More package options⟩⟩
```

The following package options control the behaviour of `\SetString`.

```
1077 ⟨⟨∗More package options⟩⟩ ≡
1078 \let\bbl@opt@strings\@nnil % accept strings=value
1079 \DeclareOption{strings}{\def\bbl@opt@strings{\BabelStringsDefault}}
1080 \DeclareOption{strings=encoded}{\let\bbl@opt@strings\relax}
1081 \def\BabelStringsDefault{generic}
1082 ⟨⟨/More package options⟩⟩
```

Main command This is the main command. With the first use it is redefined to omit the basic setup in subsequent blocks. We make sure strings contain actual letters in the range 128-255, not active characters.

```
1083 \@onlypreamble\StartBabelCommands
1084 \def\StartBabelCommands{%
1085   \begingroup
1086   \bbl@recatcode{11}%
1087   ⟨⟨Macros local to BabelCommands⟩⟩
1088   \def\bbl@provstring##1##2{%
1089     \providecommand##1{##2}%
1090     \bbl@toglobal##1}%
1091   \global\let\bbl@scafter\@empty
1092   \let\StartBabelCommands\bbl@startcmds
1093   \ifx\BabelLanguages\relax
1094     \let\BabelLanguages\CurrentOption
1095   \fi
1096   \begingroup
1097   \let\bbl@screset\@nnil % local flag - disable 1st stopcommands
1098   \StartBabelCommands}
```

```
1099 \def\bbl@startcmds{%
1100   \ifx\bbl@screset\@nnil\else
1101     \bbl@usehooks{stopcommands}{}%
1102   \fi
1103   \endgroup
1104   \begingroup
1105   \@ifstar
1106     {\ifx\bbl@opt@strings\@nnil
1107        \let\bbl@opt@strings\BabelStringsDefault
1108      \fi
1109      \bbl@startcmds@i}%
1110     \bbl@startcmds@i}
1111 \def\bbl@startcmds@i#1#2{%
1112   \edef\bbl@L{\zap@space#1 \@empty}%
1113   \edef\bbl@G{\zap@space#2 \@empty}%
1114   \bbl@startcmds@ii}
```

Parse the encoding info to get the label, input, and font parts.
Select the behaviour of \SetString. Thre are two main cases, depending of if there is an optional argument: without it and strings=encoded, strings are defined always; otherwise, they are set only if they are still undefined (ie, fallback values). With labelled blocks and strings=encoded, define the strings, but with another value, define strings only if the current label or font encoding is the value of strings; otherwise (ie, no strings or a block whose label is not in strings=) do nothing.
We presume the current block is not loaded, and therefore set (above) a couple of default values to gobble the arguments. Then, these macros are redefined if necessary according to several parameters.

```
1115 \newcommand\bbl@startcmds@ii[1][\@empty]{%
1116   \let\SetString\@gobbletwo
1117   \let\bbl@stringdef\@gobbletwo
1118   \let\AfterBabelCommands\@gobble
1119   \ifx\@empty#1%
1120     \def\bbl@sc@label{generic}%
1121     \def\bbl@encstring##1##2{%
1122       \ProvideTextCommandDefault##1{##2}%
1123       \bbl@toglobal##1%
1124       \expandafter\bbl@toglobal\csname\string?\string##1\endcsname}%
1125     \let\bbl@sctest\in@true
1126   \else
1127     \let\bbl@sc@charset\space % <- zapped below
1128     \let\bbl@sc@fontenc\space % <-    "        "
1129     \def\bbl@tempa##1=##2\@nil{%
1130       \bbl@csarg\edef{sc@\zap@space##1 \@empty}{##2 }}%
1131     \bbl@for\bbl@tempb{label=#1}{\expandafter\bbl@tempa\bbl@tempb\@nil}%
1132     \def\bbl@tempa##1 ##2{% space -> comma
1133       ##1%
1134       \ifx\@empty##2\else\ifx,##1,\else,\fi\bbl@afterfi\bbl@tempa##2\fi}%
1135     \edef\bbl@sc@fontenc{\expandafter\bbl@tempa\bbl@sc@fontenc\@empty}%
1136     \edef\bbl@sc@label{\expandafter\zap@space\bbl@sc@label\@empty}%
1137     \edef\bbl@sc@charset{\expandafter\zap@space\bbl@sc@charset\@empty}%
1138     \def\bbl@encstring##1##2{%
1139       \bbl@for\bbl@tempc\bbl@sc@fontenc{%
1140         \@ifundefined{T@\bbl@tempc}%
1141           {}%
```

68

```
1142        {\ProvideTextCommand##1\bbl@tempc{##2}%
1143         \bbl@toglobal##1%
1144         \expandafter
1145         \bbl@toglobal\csname\bbl@tempc\string##1\endcsname}}}%
1146    \def\bbl@sctest{%
1147      \@expandtwoargs
1148      \in@{,\bbl@opt@strings,}{,\bbl@sc@label,\bbl@sc@fontenc,}}%
1149    \fi
1150    \ifx\bbl@opt@strings\@nnil        % ie, no strings key -> defaults
1151    \else\ifx\bbl@opt@strings\relax    % ie, strings=encoded
1152      \let\AfterBabelCommands\bbl@aftercmds
1153      \let\SetString\bbl@setstring
1154      \let\bbl@stringdef\bbl@encstring
1155    \else       % ie, strings=value
1156    \bbl@sctest
1157    \ifin@
1158      \let\AfterBabelCommands\bbl@aftercmds
1159      \let\SetString\bbl@setstring
1160      \let\bbl@stringdef\bbl@provstring
1161    \fi\fi\fi
1162    \bbl@scswitch
1163    \ifx\bbl@G\@empty
1164      \def\SetString##1##2{%
1165        \bbl@error{Missing group for string \string##1}%
1166          {You must assign strings to some category, typically\\%
1167           captions or extras, but you set none}}%
1168    \fi
1169    \ifx\@empty#1%
1170      \@expandtwoargs
1171      \bbl@usehooks{defaultcommands}{}%
1172    \else
1173      \@expandtwoargs
1174      \bbl@usehooks{encodedcommands}{{\bbl@sc@charset}{\bbl@sc@fontenc}}%
1175    \fi}
```

There are two versions of \bbl@scswitch. The first version is used when ldfs are read, and it makes sure \⟨group⟩⟨language⟩ is reset, but only once (\bbl@screset is used to keep track of this). The second version is used in the preamble and packages loaded after babel and does nothing. The macro \bbl@forlang loops \bbl@L but its body is executed only if the value is in \BabelLanguages (inside babel) or \date⟨language⟩ is defined (after babel has been loaded). There are also two version of \bbl@forlang. The first one skips the current iteration if the language is not in \BabelLanguages (used in ldfs), and the second one skips undefined languages (after babel has been loaded) .

```
1176 \def\bbl@forlang#1#2{%
1177   \bbl@for#1\bbl@L{%
1178     \@expandtwoargs\in@{,#1,}{,\BabelLanguages,}%
1179     \ifin@#2\relax\fi}}
1180 \def\bbl@scswitch{%
1181   \bbl@forlang\bbl@tempa{%
1182     \ifx\bbl@G\@empty\else
1183       \ifx\SetString\@gobbletwo\else
1184         \edef\bbl@GL{\bbl@G\bbl@tempa}%
1185         \@expandtwoargs\in@{,\bbl@GL,}{,\bbl@screset,}%
1186         \ifin@\else
1187           \global\expandafter\let\csname\bbl@GL\endcsname\@undefined
```

```
1188            \xdef\bbl@screset{\bbl@screset,\bbl@GL}%
1189          \fi
1190        \fi
1191      \fi}}
1192 \AtEndOfPackage{%
1193    \def\bbl@forlang#1#2{\bbl@for#1\bbl@L{\@ifundefined{date#1}{}{#2}}}%
1194    \let\bbl@scswitch\relax}
1195 \@onlypreamble\EndBabelCommands
1196 \def\EndBabelCommands{%
1197    \bbl@usehooks{stopcommands}{}%
1198    \endgroup
1199    \endgroup
1200    \bbl@scafter}
```

Now we define commands to be used inside \StartBabelCommands.

Strings The following macro is the actual definition of \SetString when it is
"active"

First save the "switcher". Create it if undefined. Strings are defined only if
undefined (ie, like \providescommmand). With the event stringprocess you can
preprocess the string by manipulating the value of \BabelString. If there are
several hooks assigned to this event, preprocessing is done in the same order as
defined. Finally, the string is set.

```
1201 \def\bbl@setstring#1#2{%
1202    \bbl@forlang\bbl@tempa{%
1203      \edef\bbl@LC{\bbl@tempa\expandafter\@gobble\string#1}%
1204      \@ifundefined{\bbl@LC}% eg, \germanchaptername
1205        {\global\expandafter
1206         \bbl@add\csname\bbl@G\bbl@tempa\expandafter\endcsname\expandafter
1207           {\expandafter\bbl@scset\expandafter#1\csname\bbl@LC\endcsname}}%
1208        {}%
1209      \def\BabelString{#2}%
1210      \bbl@usehooks{stringprocess}{}%
1211      \expandafter\bbl@stringdef
1212        \csname\bbl@LC\expandafter\endcsname\expandafter{\BabelString}}}
```

Now, some addtional stuff to be used when encoded strings are used. Captions
then include \bbl@encoded for string to be expanded in case transformations. It is
\relax by default, but in \MakeUppercase and \MakeLowercase its value is a
modified expandable \@changed@cmd.

```
1213 \ifx\bbl@opt@strings\relax
1214    \def\bbl@scset#1#2{\def#1{\bbl@encoded#2}}
1215    \bbl@patchuclc
1216    \let\bbl@encoded\relax
1217    \def\bbl@encoded@uclc#1{%
1218      \@inmathwarn#1%
1219      \expandafter\ifx\csname\cf@encoding\string#1\endcsname\relax
1220        \expandafter\ifx\csname ?\string#1\endcsname\relax
1221          \TextSymbolUnavailable#1%
1222        \else
1223          \csname ?\string#1\endcsname
1224        \fi
1225      \else
1226        \csname\cf@encoding\string#1\endcsname
1227      \fi}
```

70

```
1228 \else
1229   \def\bbl@scset#1#2{\def#1{#2}}
1230 \fi
```

Define `\SetStringLoop`, which is actually set inside `\StartBabelCommands`. The current definition is somewhat complicated because we need a count, but `\count@` is not under our control (remember `\SetString` may call hooks).

```
1231 ⟨⟨*Macros local to BabelCommands⟩⟩ ≡
1232 \def\SetStringLoop##1##2{%
1233     \def\bbl@templ####1{\expandafter\noexpand\csname##1\endcsname}%
1234     \count@\z@
1235     \bbl@loop\bbl@tempa{##2}{%
1236       \advance\count@\@ne
1237       \toks@\expandafter{\bbl@tempa}%
1238       \edef\bbl@tempb{%
1239         \bbl@templ{\romannumeral\count@}{\the\toks@}%
1240         \count@=\the\count@\relax}%
1241       \expandafter\SetString\bbl@tempb}}%
1242 ⟨⟨/Macros local to BabelCommands⟩⟩
```

Delaying code Now the definition of `\AfterBabelCommands` when it is activated.

```
1243 \def\bbl@aftercmds#1{%
1244   \toks@\expandafter{\bbl@scafter#1}%
1245   \xdef\bbl@scafter{\the\toks@}}
```

Case mapping The command `\SetCase` provides a way to change the behaviour of `\MakeUppercase` and `\MakeLowercase`. `\bbl@tempa` is set by the patched `\@uclclist` to the parsing command.

```
1246 ⟨⟨*Macros local to BabelCommands⟩⟩ ≡
1247   \newcommand\SetCase[3][]{%
1248     \bbl@patchuclc
1249     \bbl@forlang\bbl@tempa{%
1250       \expandafter\bbl@encstring
1251         \csname\bbl@tempa @bbl@uclc\endcsname{\bbl@tempa##1}%
1252       \expandafter\bbl@encstring
1253         \csname\bbl@tempa @bbl@uc\endcsname{##2}%
1254       \expandafter\bbl@encstring
1255         \csname\bbl@tempa @bbl@lc\endcsname{##3}}}%
1256 ⟨⟨/Macros local to BabelCommands⟩⟩
```

Macros to deal with case mapping for hyphenation. To decide if the document is monolingual or multilingual, we make a rough guess – just see if there is a comma in the languages list, built in the first pass of the package options.

```
1257 ⟨⟨*Macros local to BabelCommands⟩⟩ ≡
1258   \newcommand\SetHyphenMap[1]{%
1259     \bbl@forlang\bbl@tempa{%
1260       \expandafter\bbl@stringdef
1261         \csname\bbl@tempa @bbl@hyphenmap\endcsname{##1}}}
1262 ⟨⟨/Macros local to BabelCommands⟩⟩
```

There are 3 helper macros which do most of the work for you.

```
1263 \newcommand\BabelLower[2]{% one to one.
1264   \ifnum\lccode#1=#2\else
1265     \babel@savevariable{\lccode#1}%
```

71

```
1266      \lccode#1=#2\relax
1267   \fi}
1268 \newcommand\BabelLowerMM[4]{% many-to-many
1269   \@tempcnta=#1\relax
1270   \@tempcntb=#4\relax
1271   \def\bbl@tempa{%
1272     \ifnum\@tempcnta>#2\else
1273       \@expandtwoargs\BabelLower{\the\@tempcnta}{\the\@tempcntb}%
1274       \advance\@tempcnta#3\relax
1275       \advance\@tempcntb#3\relax
1276       \expandafter\bbl@tempa
1277     \fi}%
1278   \bbl@tempa}
1279 \newcommand\BabelLowerMO[4]{% many-to-one
1280   \@tempcnta=#1\relax
1281   \def\bbl@tempa{%
1282     \ifnum\@tempcnta>#2\else
1283       \@expandtwoargs\BabelLower{\the\@tempcnta}{#4}%
1284       \advance\@tempcnta#3
1285       \expandafter\bbl@tempa
1286     \fi}%
1287   \bbl@tempa}
```

The following package options control the behaviour of hyphenation mapping.

```
1288 ⟨⟨*More package options⟩⟩ ≡
1289 \DeclareOption{hyphenmap=off}{\chardef\bbl@hymapopt\z@}
1290 \DeclareOption{hyphenmap=first}{\chardef\bbl@hymapopt\@ne}
1291 \DeclareOption{hyphenmap=select}{\chardef\bbl@hymapopt\tw@}
1292 \DeclareOption{hyphenmap=other}{\chardef\bbl@hymapopt\thr@@}
1293 \DeclareOption{hyphenmap=other*}{\chardef\bbl@hymapopt4\relax}
1294 ⟨⟨/More package options⟩⟩
```

Initial setup to provide a default behaviour if hypenmap is not set.

```
1295 \AtEndOfPackage{%
1296   \ifx\bbl@hymapopt\@undefined
1297     \@expandtwoargs\in@{,}{\bbl@language@opts}%
1298     \chardef\bbl@hymapopt\ifin@4\else\@ne\fi
1299   \fi}
```

7.10   Macros common to a number of languages

\set@low@box   The following macro is used to lower quotes to the same level as the comma. It prepares its argument in box register 0.

```
1300 \def\set@low@box#1{\setbox\tw@\hbox{,}\setbox\z@\hbox{#1}%
1301     \dimen\z@\ht\z@ \advance\dimen\z@ -\ht\tw@%
1302     \setbox\z@\hbox{\lower\dimen\z@ \box\z@}\ht\z@\ht\tw@ \dp\z@\dp\tw@}
```

\save@sf@q   The macro \save@sf@q is used to save and reset the current space factor.

```
1303 \def\save@sf@q#1{\leavevmode
1304   \begingroup
1305     \edef\@SF{\spacefactor\the\spacefactor}#1\@SF
1306   \endgroup}
```

7.11 Making glyphs available

This section makes a number of glyphs available that either do not exist in the OT1 encoding and have to be 'faked', or that are not accessible through T1enc.def.

7.11.1 Quotation marks

\quotedblbase In the T1 encoding the opening double quote at the baseline is available as a separate character, accessible via \quotedblbase. In the OT1 encoding it is not available, therefore we make it available by lowering the normal open quote character to the baseline.

```
1307 \ProvideTextCommand{\quotedblbase}{OT1}{%
1308   \save@sf@q{\set@low@box{\textquotedblright\/}%
1309     \box\z@\kern-.04em\bbl@allowhyphens}}
```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used this glyph can still be typeset.

```
1310 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\quotedblbase}{%
1311   \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\quotedblbase}}
```

\quotesinglbase We also need the single quote character at the baseline.

```
1312 \ProvideTextCommand{\quotesinglbase}{OT1}{%
1313   \save@sf@q{\set@low@box{\textquoteright\/}%
1314     \box\z@\kern-.04em\bbl@allowhyphens}}
```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used this glyph can still be typeset.

```
1315 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\quotesinglbase}{%
1316   \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\quotesinglbase}}
```

\guillemotleft The guillemet characters are not available in OT1 encoding. They are faked.
\guillemotright
```
1317 \ProvideTextCommand{\guillemotleft}{OT1}{%
1318   \ifmmode
1319     \ll
1320   \else
1321     \save@sf@q{\nobreak
1322       \raise.2ex\hbox{$\scriptscriptstyle\ll$}\bbl@allowhyphens}%
1323   \fi}
1324 \ProvideTextCommand{\guillemotright}{OT1}{%
1325   \ifmmode
1326     \gg
1327   \else
1328     \save@sf@q{\nobreak
1329       \raise.2ex\hbox{$\scriptscriptstyle\gg$}\bbl@allowhyphens}%
1330   \fi}
```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used these glyphs can still be typeset.

```
1331 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\guillemotleft}{%
1332   \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\guillemotleft}}
1333 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\guillemotright}{%
1334   \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\guillemotright}}
```

\guilsinglleft The single guillemets are not available in OT1 encoding. They are faked.
\guilsinglright
```
1335 \ProvideTextCommand{\guilsinglleft}{OT1}{%
1336   \ifmmode
```

```
1337      <%
1338   \else
1339     \save@sf@q{\nobreak
1340       \raise.2ex\hbox{$\scriptscriptstyle<$}\bbl@allowhyphens}%
1341   \fi}
1342 \ProvideTextCommand{\guilsinglright}{OT1}{%
1343   \ifmmode
1344      >%
1345   \else
1346     \save@sf@q{\nobreak
1347       \raise.2ex\hbox{$\scriptscriptstyle>$}\bbl@allowhyphens}%
1348   \fi}
```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used these glyphs can still be typeset.

```
1349 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\guilsinglleft}{%
1350   \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\guilsinglleft}}
1351 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\guilsinglright}{%
1352   \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\guilsinglright}}
```

7.11.2 Letters

\ij The dutch language uses the letter 'ij'. It is available in T1 encoded fonts, but not
\IJ in the OT1 encoded fonts. Therefore we fake it for the OT1 encoding.

```
1353 \DeclareTextCommand{\ij}{OT1}{%
1354   i\kern-0.02em\bbl@allowhyphens j}
1355 \DeclareTextCommand{\IJ}{OT1}{%
1356   I\kern-0.02em\bbl@allowhyphens J}
1357 \DeclareTextCommand{\ij}{T1}{\char188}
1358 \DeclareTextCommand{\IJ}{T1}{\char156}
```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used these glyphs can still be typeset.

```
1359 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\ij}{%
1360   \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\ij}}
1361 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\IJ}{%
1362   \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\IJ}}
```

\dj The croatian language needs the letters \dj and \DJ; they are available in the T1
\DJ encoding, but not in the OT1 encoding by default.
     Some code to construct these glyphs for the OT1 encoding was made available to
     me by Stipcevic Mario, (stipcevic@olimp.irb.hr).

```
1363 \def\crrtic@{\hrule height0.1ex width0.3em}
1364 \def\crttic@{\hrule height0.1ex width0.33em}
1365 \def\ddj@{%
1366   \setbox0\hbox{d}\dimen@=\ht0
1367   \advance\dimen@1ex
1368   \dimen@.45\dimen@
1369   \dimen@ii\expandafter\rem@pt\the\fontdimen\@ne\font\dimen@
1370   \advance\dimen@ii.5ex
1371   \leavevmode\rlap{\raise\dimen@\hbox{\kern\dimen@ii\vbox{\crrtic@}}}}
1372 \def\DDJ@{%
1373   \setbox0\hbox{D}\dimen@=.55\ht0
1374   \dimen@ii\expandafter\rem@pt\the\fontdimen\@ne\font\dimen@
1375   \advance\dimen@ii.15ex %             correction for the dash position
1376   \advance\dimen@ii-.15\fontdimen7\font %     correction for cmtt font
```

```
1377    \dimen\thr@@\expandafter\rem@pt\the\fontdimen7\font\dimen@
1378    \leavevmode\rlap{\raise\dimen@\hbox{\kern\dimen@ii\vbox{\crttic@}}}}}
1379 %
1380 \DeclareTextCommand{\dj}{OT1}{\ddj@ d}
1381 \DeclareTextCommand{\DJ}{OT1}{\DDJ@ D}
```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used these glyphs can still be typeset.

```
1382 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\dj}{%
1383    \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\dj}}
1384 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\DJ}{%
1385    \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\DJ}}
```

\SS For the T1 encoding \SS is defined and selects a specific glyph from the font, but for other encodings it is not available. Therefore we make it available here.

```
1386 \DeclareTextCommand{\SS}{OT1}{SS}
1387 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\SS}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\SS}}
```

7.11.3 Shorthands for quotation marks

Shorthands are provided for a number of different quotation marks, which make them usable both outside and inside mathmode.

\glq The 'german' single quotes.

\grq
```
1388 \ProvideTextCommand{\glq}{OT1}{%
1389    \textormath{\quotesinglbase}{\mbox{\quotesinglbase}}}
1390 \ProvideTextCommand{\glq}{T1}{%
1391    \textormath{\quotesinglbase}{\mbox{\quotesinglbase}}}
1392 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\glq}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\glq}
```

The definition of \grq depends on the fontencoding. With T1 encoding no extra kerning is needed.

```
1393 \ProvideTextCommand{\grq}{T1}{%
1394    \textormath{\textquoteleft}{\mbox{\textquoteleft}}}
1395 \ProvideTextCommand{\grq}{OT1}{%
1396    \save@sf@q{\kern-.0125em%
1397    \textormath{\textquoteleft}{\mbox{\textquoteleft}}%
1398    \kern.07em\relax}}
1399 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\grq}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\grq}
```

\glqq The 'german' double quotes.

\grqq
```
1400 \ProvideTextCommand{\glqq}{OT1}{%
1401    \textormath{\quotedblbase}{\mbox{\quotedblbase}}}
1402 \ProvideTextCommand{\glqq}{T1}{%
1403    \textormath{\quotedblbase}{\mbox{\quotedblbase}}}
1404 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\glqq}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\glqq}
```

The definition of \grqq depends on the fontencoding. With T1 encoding no extra kerning is needed.

```
1405 \ProvideTextCommand{\grqq}{T1}{%
1406    \textormath{\textquotedblleft}{\mbox{\textquotedblleft}}}
1407 \ProvideTextCommand{\grqq}{OT1}{%
1408    \save@sf@q{\kern-.07em%
1409    \textormath{\textquotedblleft}{\mbox{\textquotedblleft}}%
1410    \kern.07em\relax}}
1411 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\grqq}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\grqq}
```

\flq   The 'french' single guillemets.

\frq
```
1412 \ProvideTextCommand{\flq}{OT1}{%
1413   \textormath{\guilsinglleft}{\mbox{\guilsinglleft}}}
1414 \ProvideTextCommand{\flq}{T1}{%
1415   \textormath{\guilsinglleft}{\mbox{\guilsinglleft}}}
1416 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\flq}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\flq}

1417 \ProvideTextCommand{\frq}{OT1}{%
1418   \textormath{\guilsinglright}{\mbox{\guilsinglright}}}
1419 \ProvideTextCommand{\frq}{T1}{%
1420   \textormath{\guilsinglright}{\mbox{\guilsinglright}}}
1421 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\frq}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\frq}
```

\flqq   The 'french' double guillemets.

\frqq
```
1422 \ProvideTextCommand{\flqq}{OT1}{%
1423   \textormath{\guillemotleft}{\mbox{\guillemotleft}}}
1424 \ProvideTextCommand{\flqq}{T1}{%
1425   \textormath{\guillemotleft}{\mbox{\guillemotleft}}}
1426 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\flqq}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\flqq}

1427 \ProvideTextCommand{\frqq}{OT1}{%
1428   \textormath{\guillemotright}{\mbox{\guillemotright}}}
1429 \ProvideTextCommand{\frqq}{T1}{%
1430   \textormath{\guillemotright}{\mbox{\guillemotright}}}
1431 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\frqq}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\frqq}
```

7.11.4 Umlauts and tremas

The command \" needs to have a different effect for different languages. For
German for instance, the 'umlaut' should be positioned lower than the default
position for placing it over the letters a, o, u, A, O and U. When placed over an e, i,
E or I it can retain its normal position. For Dutch the same glyph is always placed
in the lower position.

\umlauthigh   To be able to provide both positions of \" we provide two commands to switch the
\umlautlow   positioning, the default will be \umlauthigh (the normal positioning).

```
1432 \def\umlauthigh{%
1433   \def\bbl@umlauta##1{\leavevmode\bgroup%
1434     \expandafter\accent\csname\f@encoding dqpos\endcsname
1435     ##1\bbl@allowhyphens\egroup}%
1436   \let\bbl@umlaute\bbl@umlauta}
1437 \def\umlautlow{%
1438   \def\bbl@umlauta{\protect\lower@umlaut}}
1439 \def\umlautelow{%
1440   \def\bbl@umlaute{\protect\lower@umlaut}}
1441 \umlauthigh
```

\lower@umlaut   The command \lower@umlaut is used to position the \" closer the the letter.
We want the umlaut character lowered, nearer to the letter. To do this we need an
extra ⟨dimen⟩ register.

```
1442 \expandafter\ifx\csname U@D\endcsname\relax
1443   \csname newdimen\endcsname\U@D
1444 \fi
```

The following code fools TeX's make_accent procedure about the current x-height
of the font to force another placement of the umlaut character. First we have to

save the current x-height of the font, because we'll change this font dimension and this is always done globally.

Then we compute the new x-height in such a way that the umlaut character is lowered to the base character. The value of .45ex depends on the METAFONT parameters with which the fonts were built. (Just try out, which value will look best.) If the new x-height is too low, it is not changed. Finally we call the \accent primitive, reset the old x-height and insert the base character in the argument.

```
1445 \def\lower@umlaut#1{%
1446   \leavevmode\bgroup
1447     \U@D 1ex%
1448     {\setbox\z@\hbox{%
1449       \expandafter\char\csname\f@encoding dqpos\endcsname}%
1450       \dimen@ -.45ex\advance\dimen@\ht\z@
1451       \ifdim 1ex<\dimen@ \fontdimen5\font\dimen@ \fi}%
1452     \expandafter\accent\csname\f@encoding dqpos\endcsname
1453     \fontdimen5\font\U@D #1%
1454   \egroup}
```

For all vowels we declare \" to be a composite command which uses \bbl@umlauta or \bbl@umlaute to position the umlaut character. We need to be sure that these definitions override the ones that are provided when the package fontenc with option OT1 is used. Therefore these declarations are postponed until the beginning of the document. Note these definitions only apply to some languages, but babel sets them for *all* languages – you may want to redefine \bbl@umlauta and/or \bbl@umlaute for a language in the corresponding ldf (using the babel switching mechanism, of course).

```
1455 \AtBeginDocument{%
1456   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{a}{\bbl@umlauta{a}}%
1457   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{e}{\bbl@umlaute{e}}%
1458   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{i}{\bbl@umlaute{\i}}%
1459   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{\i}{\bbl@umlaute{\i}}%
1460   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{o}{\bbl@umlauta{o}}%
1461   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{u}{\bbl@umlauta{u}}%
1462   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{A}{\bbl@umlauta{A}}%
1463   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{E}{\bbl@umlaute{E}}%
1464   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{I}{\bbl@umlaute{I}}%
1465   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{O}{\bbl@umlauta{O}}%
1466   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{U}{\bbl@umlauta{U}}%
1467 }
```

Finally, the default is to use English as the main language.

```
1468 \ifx\l@english\@undefined
1469   \chardef\l@english\z@
1470 \fi
1471 \main@language{english}
```

Now we load definition files for engines.

```
1472 \ifcase\bbl@engine\or
1473   \input luababel.def
1474 \or
1475   \input xebabel.def
1476 \fi
```

8 The kernel of Babel (only LaTeX)

8.1 The redefinition of the style commands

The rest of the code in this file can only be processed by LaTeX, so we check the current format. If it is plain TeX, processing should stop here. But, because of the need to limit the scope of the definition of `\format`, a macro that is used locally in the following `\if` statement, this comparison is done inside a group. To prevent TeX from complaining about an unclosed group, the processing of the command `\endinput` is deferred until after the group is closed. This is accomplished by the command `\aftergroup`.

```
1477 {\def\format{lplain}
1478 \ifx\fmtname\format
1479 \else
1480   \def\format{LaTeX2e}
1481   \ifx\fmtname\format
1482   \else
1483     \aftergroup\endinput
1484   \fi
1485 \fi}
```

8.2 Cross referencing macros

The LaTeX book states:

> The *key* argument is any sequence of letters, digits, and punctuation symbols; upper- and lowercase letters are regarded as different.

When the above quote should still be true when a document is typeset in a language that has active characters, special care has to be taken of the category codes of these characters when they appear in an argument of the cross referencing macros.
When a cross referencing command processes its argument, all tokens in this argument should be character tokens with category 'letter' or 'other'.
The only way to accomplish this in most cases is to use the trick described in the TeXbook [1] (Appendix D, page 382). The primitive `\meaning` applied to a token expands to the current meaning of this token. For example, '`\meaning\A`' with `\A` defined as '`\def\A#1{\B}`' expands to the characters '`macro:#1->\B`' with all category codes set to 'other' or 'space'.

`\newlabel` The macro `\label` writes a line with a `\newlabel` command into the `.aux` file to define labels.

```
1486 %\bbl@redefine\newlabel#1#2{%
1487 %   \@safe@activestrue\org@newlabel{#1}{#2}\@safe@activesfalse}
```

`\@newl@bel` We need to change the definition of the LaTeX-internal macro `\@newl@bel`. This is needed because we need to make sure that shorthand characters expand to their non-active version.
The following package options control which macros are to be redefined.

```
1488 ⟨∗More package options⟩ ≡
1489 \DeclareOption{safe=none}{\let\bbl@opt@safe\@empty}
1490 \DeclareOption{safe=bib}{\def\bbl@opt@safe{B}}
1491 \DeclareOption{safe=ref}{\def\bbl@opt@safe{R}}
1492 ⟨⟨/More package options⟩⟩
```

First we open a new group to keep the changed setting of \protect local and then we set the @safe@actives switch to true to make sure that any shorthand that appears in any of the arguments immediately expands to its non-active self.

```
1493 \ifx\bbl@opt@safe\@empty\else
1494   \def\@newl@bel#1#2#3{%
1495    {\@safe@activestrue
1496     \@ifundefined{#1@#2}%
1497        \relax
1498        {\gdef\@multiplelabels{%
1499           \@latex@warning@no@line{There were multiply-defined labels}}%
1500         \@latex@warning@no@line{Label '#2' multiply defined}}%
1501     \global\@namedef{#1@#2}{#3}}}
```

\@testdef An internal LATEX macro used to test if the labels that have been written on the .aux file have changed. It is called by the \enddocument macro. This macro needs to be completely rewritten, using \meaning. The reason for this is that in some cases the expansion of \#1@#2 contains the same characters as the #3; but the character codes differ. Therefore LATEX keeps reporting that the labels may have changed.

```
1502   \CheckCommand*\@testdef[3]{%
1503     \def\reserved@a{#3}%
1504     \expandafter\ifx\csname#1@#2\endcsname\reserved@a
1505     \else
1506       \@tempswatrue
1507     \fi}
```

Now that we made sure that \@testdef still has the same definition we can rewrite it. First we make the shorthands 'safe'.

```
1508   \def\@testdef#1#2#3{%
1509     \@@safe@activestrue
```

Then we use \bbl@tempa as an 'alias' for the macro that contains the label which is being checked.

```
1510     \expandafter\let\expandafter\bbl@tempa\csname #1@#2\endcsname
```

Then we define \bbl@tempb just as \@newl@bel does it.

```
1511     \def\bbl@tempb{#3}%
1512     \@@safe@activesfalse
```

When the label is defined we replace the definition of \bbl@tempa by its meaning.

```
1513     \ifx\bbl@tempa\relax
1514     \else
1515       \edef\bbl@tempa{\expandafter\strip@prefix\meaning\bbl@tempa}%
1516     \fi
```

We do the same for \bbl@tempb.

```
1517     \edef\bbl@tempb{\expandafter\strip@prefix\meaning\bbl@tempb}%
```

If the label didn't change, \bbl@tempa and \bbl@tempb should be identical macros.

```
1518     \ifx\bbl@tempa\bbl@tempb
1519     \else
1520       \@tempswatrue
1521     \fi}
1522 \fi
```

\ref   The same holds for the macro \ref that references a label and \pageref to
\pageref reference a page. So we redefine \ref and \pageref. While we change these

79

macros, we make them robust as well (if they weren't already) to prevent problems if they should become expanded at the wrong moment.

```
1523 \@expandtwoargs\in@{R}\bbl@opt@safe
1524 \ifin@
1525   \bbl@redefinerobust\ref#1{%
1526     \@safe@activestrue\org@ref{#1}\@safe@activesfalse}
1527   \bbl@redefinerobust\pageref#1{%
1528     \@safe@activestrue\org@pageref{#1}\@safe@activesfalse}
1529 \else
1530   \let\org@ref\ref
1531   \let\org@pageref\pageref
1532 \fi
```

\@citex   The macro used to cite from a bibliography, \cite, uses an internal macro, \@citex. It is this internal macro that picks up the argument(s), so we redefine this internal macro and leave \cite alone. The first argument is used for typesetting, so the shorthands need only be deactivated in the second argument.

```
1533 \@expandtwoargs\in@{B}\bbl@opt@safe
1534 \ifin@
1535   \bbl@redefine\@citex[#1]#2{%
1536     \@safe@activestrue\edef\@tempa{#2}\@safe@activesfalse
1537     \org@@citex[#1]{\@tempa}}
```

Unfortunately, the packages natbib and cite need a different definition of \@citex... To begin with, natbib has a definition for \@citex with *three* arguments... We only know that a package is loaded when \begin{document} is executed, so we need to postpone the different redefinition.

```
1538   \AtBeginDocument{%
1539     \@ifpackageloaded{natbib}{%
```

Notice that we use \def here instead of \bbl@redefine because \org@@citex is already defined and we don't want to overwrite that definition (it would result in parameter stack overflow because of a circular definition).
(Recent versions of natbib change dynamically \@citex, so PR4087 doesn't seem fixable in a simple way. Just load natbib before.)

```
1540     \def\@citex[#1][#2]#3{%
1541       \@safe@activestrue\edef\@tempa{#3}\@safe@activesfalse
1542       \org@@citex[#1][#2]{\@tempa}}%
1543     }{}}
```

The package cite has a definition of \@citex where the shorthands need to be turned off in both arguments.

```
1544   \AtBeginDocument{%
1545     \@ifpackageloaded{cite}{%
1546       \def\@citex[#1]#2{%
1547         \@safe@activestrue\org@@citex[#1]{#2}\@safe@activesfalse}%
1548       }{}}
```

\nocite   The macro \nocite which is used to instruct BiBTEX to extract uncited references from the database.

```
1549 \bbl@redefine\nocite#1{%
1550   \@safe@activestrue\org@nocite{#1}\@safe@activesfalse}
```

\bibcite   The macro that is used in the .aux file to define citation labels. When packages such as natbib or cite are not loaded its second argument is used to typeset the citation label. In that case, this second argument can contain active characters but

is used in an environment where `\@safe@activestrue` is in effect. This switch needs to be reset inside the `\hbox` which contains the citation label. In order to determine during `.aux` file processing which definition of `\bibcite` is needed we define `\bibcite` in such a way that it redefines itself with the proper definition.

```
1551    \bbl@redefine\bibcite{%
```

We call `\bbl@cite@choice` to select the proper definition for `\bibcite`. This new definition is then activated.

```
1552      \bbl@cite@choice
1553      \bibcite}
```

\bbl@bibcite   The macro `\bbl@bibcite` holds the definition of `\bibcite` needed when neither natbib nor cite is loaded.

```
1554    \def\bbl@bibcite#1#2{%
1555      \org@bibcite{#1}{\@safe@activesfalse#2}}
```

\bbl@cite@choice   The macro `\bbl@cite@choice` determines which definition of `\bibcite` is needed.

```
1556    \def\bbl@cite@choice{%
```

First we give `\bibcite` its default definition.

```
1557      \global\let\bibcite\bbl@bibcite
```

Then, when natbib is loaded we restore the original definition of `\bibcite`.

```
1558      \@ifpackageloaded{natbib}{\global\let\bibcite\org@bibcite}{}%
```

For cite we do the same.

```
1559      \@ifpackageloaded{cite}{\global\let\bibcite\org@bibcite}{}%
```

Make sure this only happens once.

```
1560      \global\let\bbl@cite@choice\relax}
```

When a document is run for the first time, no `.aux` file is available, and `\bibcite` will not yet be properly defined. In this case, this has to happen before the document starts.

```
1561    \AtBeginDocument{\bbl@cite@choice}
```

\@bibitem   One of the two internal LaTeX macros called by `\bibitem` that write the citation label on the `.aux` file.

```
1562    \bbl@redefine\@bibitem#1{%
1563      \@safe@activestrue\org@@bibitem{#1}\@safe@activesfalse}
1564 \else
1565    \let\org@nocite\nocite
1566    \let\org@@citex\@citex
1567    \let\org@bibcite\bibcite
1568    \let\org@@bibitem\@bibitem
1569 \fi
```

8.3 Marks

\markright   Because the output routine is asynchronous, we must pass the current language attribute to the head lines, together with the text that is put into them. To achieve this we need to adapt the definition of `\markright` and `\markboth` somewhat.

```
1570 \bbl@redefine\markright#1{%
```

First of all we temporarily store the language switching command, using an expanded definition in order to get the current value of `\languagename`.

```
1571    \edef\bbl@tempb{\noexpand\protect
1572      \noexpand\foreignlanguage{\languagename}}%
```

81

Then, we check whether the argument is empty; if it is, we just make sure the scratch token register is empty.

```
1573    \def\bbl@arg{#1}%
1574    \ifx\bbl@arg\@empty
1575      \toks@{}%
1576    \else
```

Next, we store the argument to `\markright` in the scratch token register, together with the expansion of `\bbl@tempb` (containing the language switching command) as defined before. This way these commands will not be expanded by using `\edef` later on, and we make sure that the text is typeset using the correct language settings. While doing so, we make sure that active characters that may end up in the mark are not disabled by the output routine kicking in while `\@safe@activestrue` is in effect.

```
1577      \expandafter\toks@\expandafter{%
1578              \bbl@tempb{\protect\bbl@restore@actives#1}}%
1579    \fi
```

Then we define a temporary control sequence using `\edef`.

```
1580    \edef\bbl@tempa{%
```

When `\bbl@tempa` is executed, only `\languagename` will be expanded, because of the way the token register was filled.

```
1581      \noexpand\org@markright{\the\toks@}}%
1582    \bbl@tempa
1583 }
```

`\markboth`
`\@mkboth`   The definition of `\markboth` is equivalent to that of `\markright`, except that we need two token registers. The documentclasses `report` and `book` define and set the headings for the page. While doing so they also store a copy of `\markboth` in `\@mkboth`. Therefore we need to check whether `\@mkboth` has already been set. If so we neeed to do that again with the new definition of `\makrboth`.

```
1584 \ifx\@mkboth\markboth
1585    \def\bbl@tempc{\let\@mkboth\markboth}
1586 \else
1587    \def\bbl@tempc{}
1588 \fi
```

Now we can start the new definition of `\markboth`

```
1589 \bbl@redefine\markboth#1#2{%
1590    \edef\bbl@tempb{\noexpand\protect
1591      \noexpand\foreignlanguage{\languagename}}%
1592    \def\bbl@arg{#1}%
1593    \ifx\bbl@arg\@empty
1594      \toks@{}%
1595    \else
1596     \expandafter\toks@\expandafter{%
1597              \bbl@tempb{\protect\bbl@restore@actives#1}}%
1598    \fi
1599    \def\bbl@arg{#2}%
1600    \ifx\bbl@arg\@empty
1601      \toks8{}%
1602    \else
1603     \expandafter\toks8\expandafter{%
1604              \bbl@tempb{\protect\bbl@restore@actives#2}}%
1605    \fi
```

82

```
1606    \edef\bbl@tempa{%
1607        \noexpand\org@markboth{\the\toks@}{\the\toks8}}%
1608    \bbl@tempa
1609 }
```

and copy it to `\@mkboth` if necesary.

```
1610 \bbl@tempc
```

8.4 Preventing clashes with other packages

8.4.1 `ifthen`

`\ifthenelse` Sometimes a document writer wants to create a special effect depending on the page a certain fragment of text appears on. This can be achieved by the following piece of code:

```
%       \ifthenelse{\isodd{\pageref{some:label}}}
%               {code for odd pages}
%               {code for even pages}
%
```

In order for this to work the argument of `\isodd` needs to be fully expandable. With the above redefinition of `\pageref` it is not in the case of this example. To overcome that, we add some code to the definition of `\ifthenelse` to make things work.

The first thing we need to do is check if the package `ifthen` is loaded. This should be done at `\begin{document}` time.

```
1611 \@expandtwoargs\in@{R}\bbl@opt@safe
1612 \ifin@
1613    \AtBeginDocument{%
1614        \@ifpackageloaded{ifthen}{%
```

Then we can redefine `\ifthenelse`:

```
1615        \bbl@redefine@long\ifthenelse#1#2#3{%
```

We want to revert the definition of `\pageref` and `\ref` to their original definition for the first argument of `\ifthenelse`, so we first need to store their current meanings.

```
1616            \let\bbl@temp@pref\pageref
1617            \let\pageref\org@pageref
1618            \let\bbl@temp@ref\ref
1619            \let\ref\org@ref
```

Then we can set the `\@safe@actives` switch and call the original `\ifthenelse`. In order to be able to use shorthands in the second and third arguments of `\ifthenelse` the resetting of the switch *and* the definition of `\pageref` happens inside those arguments. When the package wasn't loaded we do nothing.

```
1620            \@safe@activestrue
1621            \org@ifthenelse{#1}{%
1622                \let\pageref\bbl@temp@pref
1623                \let\ref\bbl@temp@ref
1624                \@safe@activesfalse
1625                #2}{%
1626                \let\pageref\bbl@temp@pref
1627                \let\ref\bbl@temp@ref
1628                \@safe@activesfalse
1629                #3}%
```

```
1630              }%
1631            }{}%
1632          }
```

8.4.2 `varioref`

`\@@vpageref` When the package varioref is in use we need to modify its internal command
`\vrefpagenum` `\@@vpageref` in order to prevent problems when an active character ends up in the
`\Ref` argument of `\vref`.

```
1633    \AtBeginDocument{%
1634      \@ifpackageloaded{varioref}{%
1635        \bbl@redefine\@@vpageref#1[#2]#3{%
1636          \@safe@activestrue
1637          \org@@@vpageref{#1}[#2]{#3}%
1638          \@safe@activesfalse}%
```

The same needs to happen for `\vrefpagenum`.

```
1639        \bbl@redefine\vrefpagenum#1#2{%
1640          \@safe@activestrue
1641          \org@vrefpagenum{#1}{#2}%
1642          \@safe@activesfalse}%
```

The package varioref defines `\Ref` to be a robust command wich uppercases the
first character of the reference text. In order to be able to do that it needs to
access the exandable form of `\ref`. So we employ a little trick here. We redefine
the (internal) command `\Ref␣` to call `\org@ref` instead of `\ref`. The disadvantgage
of this solution is that whenever the derfinition of `\Ref` changes, this definition
needs to be updated as well.

```
1643        \expandafter\def\csname Ref \endcsname#1{%
1644          \protected@edef\@tempa{\org@ref{#1}}\expandafter\MakeUppercase\@tempa}
1645        }{}%
1646      }
1647 \fi
```

8.4.3 `hhline`

`\hhline` Delaying the activation of the shorthand characters has introduced a problem with
the hhline package. The reason is that it uses the ':' character which is made
active by the french support in babel. Therefore we need to *reload* the package
when the ':' is an active character.

So at `\begin{document}` we check whether hhline is loaded.

```
1648 \AtEndOfPackage{%
1649   \AtBeginDocument{%
1650     \@ifpackageloaded{hhline}%
```

Then we check whether the expansion of `\normal@char:` is not equal to `\relax`.

```
1651        {\expandafter\ifx\csname normal@char\string:\endcsname\relax
1652         \else
```

In that case we simply reload the package. Note that this happens *after* the
category code of the @-sign has been changed to other, so we need to temporarily
change it to letter again.

```
1653          \makeatletter
1654          \def\@currname{hhline}\input{hhline.sty}\makeatother
1655        \fi}%
1656      {}}}
```

84

8.4.4 `hyperref`

`\pdfstringdefDisableCommands` A number of interworking problems between `babel` and `hyperref` are tackled by `hyperref` itself. The following code was introduced to prevent some annoying warnings but it broke bookmarks. This was quickly fixed in `hyperref`, which essentially made it no-op. However, it will not removed for the moment because `hyperref` is expecting it.

```
1657 \AtBeginDocument{%
1658   \@ifundefined{pdfstringdefDisableCommands}%
1659     {}%
1660     {\pdfstringdefDisableCommands{%
1661        \languageshorthands{system}}%
1662     }%
1663 }
```

8.4.5 `fancyhdr`

`\FOREIGNLANGUAGE` The package `fancyhdr` treats the running head and fout lines somewhat differently as the standard classes. A symptom of this is that the command `\foreignlanguage` which babel adds to the marks can end up inside the argument of `\MakeUppercase`. To prevent unexpected results we need to define `\FOREIGNLANGUAGE` here.

```
1664 \DeclareRobustCommand{\FOREIGNLANGUAGE}[1]{%
1665   \lowercase{\foreignlanguage{#1}}}
```

`\substitutefontfamily` The command `\substitutefontfamily` creates an `.fd` file on the fly. The first argument is an encoding mnemonic, the second and third arguments are font family names.

```
1666 \def\substitutefontfamily#1#2#3{%
1667   \lowercase{\immediate\openout15=#1#2.fd\relax}%
1668   \immediate\write15{%
1669     \string\ProvidesFile{#1#2.fd}%
1670     [\the\year/\two@digits{\the\month}/\two@digits{\the\day}
1671      \space generated font description file]^^J
1672     \string\DeclareFontFamily{#1}{#2}{}^^J
1673     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{m}{n}{<->ssub * #3/m/n}{}^^J
1674     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{m}{it}{<->ssub * #3/m/it}{}^^J
1675     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{m}{sl}{<->ssub * #3/m/sl}{}^^J
1676     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{m}{sc}{<->ssub * #3/m/sc}{}^^J
1677     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{b}{n}{<->ssub * #3/bx/n}{}^^J
1678     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{b}{it}{<->ssub * #3/bx/it}{}^^J
1679     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{b}{sl}{<->ssub * #3/bx/sl}{}^^J
1680     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{b}{sc}{<->ssub * #3/bx/sc}{}^^J
1681   }%
1682   \closeout15
1683 }
```

This command should only be used in the preamble of a document.

```
1684 \@onlypreamble\substitutefontfamily
```

8.5 Encoding issues

Because documents may use non-ASCII font encodings, we make sure that the logos of TeX and LaTeX always come out in the right encoding. There is a list of non-ASCII encodings. Unfortunately, `fontenc` deletes its package options, so we must guess which encodings has been loaded by traversing `\@filelist` to search

for ⟨enc⟩enc.def. If a non-ASCII has been loaded, we define versions of \TeX and \LaTeX for them using \ensureascii. The default ASCII encoding is set, too (in reverse order): the "main" encoding (when the document begins), the last loaded, or OT1.

\ensureascii

```
1685 \newcommand\BabelNonASCII{LGR,X2,OT2,OT3,OT6,LHE,LWN,LMA,LMC,LMS,LMU,}
1686 \let\org@TeX\TeX
1687 \let\org@LaTeX\LaTeX
1688 \let\ensureascii\@firstofone
1689 \AtBeginDocument{%
1690   \in@false
1691   \bbl@loopx\bbl@tempa\BabelNonASCII{% is there a non-ascii enc?
1692     \ifin@\else
1693       \edef\bbl@tempb{{,\bbl@tempa enc.def,}{,\@filelist,}}%
1694       \lowercase\expandafter{\expandafter\in@\bbl@tempb}%
1695     \fi}
1696   \ifin@ % if a non-ascii has been loaded
1697     \def\ensureascii#1{{\fontencoding{OT1}\selectfont#1}}%
1698     \DeclareTextCommandDefault{\TeX}{\org@TeX}%
1699     \DeclareTextCommandDefault{\LaTeX}{\org@LaTeX}%
1700     \def\bbl@tempb#1\@@{\uppercase{\bbl@tempc#1}ENC.DEF\@empty\@@}%
1701     \def\bbl@tempc#1ENC.DEF#2\@@{%
1702       \ifx\@empty#2\else
1703         \@ifundefined{T@#1}%
1704           {}%
1705           {\@expandtwoargs\in@{,#1,}{,\BabelNonASCII,}%
1706            \ifin@
1707              \DeclareTextCommand{\TeX}{#1}{\ensureascii{\org@TeX}}%
1708              \DeclareTextCommand{\LaTeX}{#1}{\ensureascii{\org@LaTeX}}%
1709            \else
1710              \def\ensureascii##1{{\fontencoding{#1}\selectfont##1}}%
1711            \fi}%
1712       \fi}%
1713     \bbl@loopx\bbl@tempa\@filelist{\expandafter\bbl@tempb\bbl@tempa\@@}%
1714     \@expandtwoargs\in@{,\cf@encoding,}{,\BabelNonASCII,}%
1715     \ifin@\else
1716       \edef\ensureascii#1{{%
1717         \noexpand\fontencoding{\cf@encoding}\noexpand\selectfont#1}}%
1718     \fi
1719   \fi}
```

Now comes the old deprecated stuff (with a little change in 3.9l, for fontspec). The first thing we need to do is to determine, at \begin{document}, which latin fontencoding to use.

\latinencoding When text is being typeset in an encoding other than 'latin' (OT1 or T1), it would be nice to still have Roman numerals come out in the Latin encoding. So we first assume that the current encoding at the end of processing the package is the Latin encoding.

```
1720 \AtEndOfPackage{\edef\latinencoding{\cf@encoding}}
```

But this might be overruled with a later loading of the package fontenc. Therefore we check at the execution of \begin{document} whether it was loaded with the T1 option. The normal way to do this (using \@ifpackageloaded) is disabled for this

86

package. Now we have to revert to parsing the internal macro \@filelist which
contains all the filenames loaded.

```
1721 \AtBeginDocument{%
1722   \@ifpackageloaded{fontspec}%
1723     {\xdef\latinencoding{%
1724        \@ifundefined{UTFencname}%
1725          {EU\ifcase\bbl@engine\or2\or1\fi}%
1726          {\UTFencname}}}%
1727     {\gdef\latinencoding{OT1}%
1728      \ifx\cf@encoding\bbl@t@one
1729        \xdef\latinencoding{\bbl@t@one}%
1730      \else
1731        \@ifl@aded{def}{t1enc}{\xdef\latinencoding{\bbl@t@one}}{}%
1732      \fi}}
```

\latintext   Then we can define the command \latintext which is a declarative switch to a
latin font-encoding. Usage of this macro is deprecated.

```
1733 \DeclareRobustCommand{\latintext}{%
1734   \fontencoding{\latinencoding}\selectfont
1735   \def\encodingdefault{\latinencoding}}
```

\textlatin   This command takes an argument which is then typeset using the requested font
encoding. In order to avoid many encoding switches it operates in a local scope.

```
1736 \ifx\@undefined\DeclareTextFontCommand
1737   \DeclareRobustCommand{\textlatin}[1]{\leavevmode{\latintext #1}}
1738 \else
1739   \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textlatin}{\latintext}
1740 \fi
```

8.6 Local Language Configuration

\loadlocalcfg   At some sites it may be necessary to add site-specific actions to a language
definition file. This can be done by creating a file with the same name as the
language definition file, but with the extension .cfg. For instance the file
norsk.cfg will be loaded when the language definition file norsk.ldf is loaded.
For plain-based formats we don't want to override the definition of \loadlocalcfg
from plain.def.

```
1741 \ifx\loadlocalcfg\@undefined
1742   \@ifpackagewith{babel}{noconfigs}%
1743     {\let\loadlocalcfg\@gobble}%
1744     {\def\loadlocalcfg#1{%
1745        \InputIfFileExists{#1.cfg}%
1746          {\typeout{*************************************^^J%
1747                    * Local config file #1.cfg used^^J%
1748                    *}}%
1749          \@empty}}
1750 \fi
```

Just to be compatible with LaTeX 2.09 we add a few more lines of code:

```
1751 \ifx\@unexpandable@protect\@undefined
1752   \def\@unexpandable@protect{\noexpand\protect\noexpand}
1753   \long\def\protected@write#1#2#3{%
1754     \begingroup
1755       \let\thepage\relax
1756       #2%
```

```
1757        \let\protect\@unexpandable@protect
1758        \edef\reserved@a{\write#1{#3}}%
1759        \reserved@a
1760      \endgroup
1761      \if@nobreak\ifvmode\nobreak\fi\fi}
1762 \fi
1763 ⟨/core⟩
```

9 Internationalizing LaTeX 2.09

Now that we're sure that the code is seen by LaTeX only, we have to find out what the main (primary) document style is because we want to redefine some macros. This is only necessary for releases of LaTeX dated before December 1991. Therefore this part of the code can optionally be included in `babel.def` by specifying the docstrip option `names`.

The standard styles can be distinguished by checking whether some macros are defined. In table 1 an overview is given of the macros that can be used for this purpose.

article	:	both the \chapter and \opening macros are undefined
report and book	:	the \chapter macro is defined and the \opening is undefined
letter	:	the \chapter macro is undefined and the \opening is defined

Table 1: How to determine the main document style

The macros that have to be redefined for the `report` and `book` document styles happen to be the same, so there is no need to distinguish between those two styles.

\doc@style First a parameter \doc@style is defined to identify the current document style. This parameter might have been defined by a document style that already uses macros instead of hard-wired texts, such as `artikel1.sty` [6], so the existence of \doc@style is checked. If this macro is undefined, i.e., if the document style is unknown and could therefore contain hard-wired texts, \doc@style is defined to the default value '0'.

```
1764 ⟨∗names⟩
1765 \ifx\@undefined\doc@style
1766   \def\doc@style{0}%
```

This parameter is defined in the following `if` construction (see table 1):

```
1767   \ifx\@undefined\opening
1768     \ifx\@undefined\chapter
1769       \def\doc@style{1}%
1770     \else
1771       \def\doc@style{2}%
1772     \fi
1773   \else
1774     \def\doc@style{3}%
1775   \fi%
1776 \fi%
```

Now here comes the real work: we start to redefine things and replace hard-wired texts by macros. These redefinitions should be carried out conditionally, in case it has already been done.

For the `figure` and `table` environments we have in all styles:

```
1777 \@ifundefined{figurename}{\def\fnum@figure{\figurename{} \thefigure}}{}
1778 \@ifundefined{tablename}{\def\fnum@table{\tablename{} \thetable}}{}
```

The rest of the macros have to be treated differently for each style. When `\doc@style` still has its default value nothing needs to be done.

```
1779 \ifcase \doc@style\relax
1780 \or
```

This means that `babel.def` is read after the `article` style, where no `\chapter` and `\opening` commands are defined[30].

First we have the `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures` and `\listoftables`:

```
1781 \@ifundefined{contentsname}%
1782     {\def\tableofcontents{\section*{\contentsname\@mkboth
1783         {\uppercase{\contentsname}}{\uppercase{\contentsname}}}%
1784       \@starttoc{toc}}}{}
1785 \@ifundefined{listfigurename}%
1786     {\def\listoffigures{\section*{\listfigurename\@mkboth
1787         {\uppercase{\listfigurename}}{\uppercase{\listfigurename}}}%
1788      \@starttoc{lof}}}{}
1789 \@ifundefined{listtablename}%
1790     {\def\listoftables{\section*{\listtablename\@mkboth
1791         {\uppercase{\listtablename}}{\uppercase{\listtablename}}}%
1792      \@starttoc{lot}}}{}
```

Then the `\thebibliography` and `\theindex` environments.

```
1793 \@ifundefined{refname}%
1794     {\def\thebibliography#1{\section*{\refname
1795      \@mkboth{\uppercase{\refname}}{\uppercase{\refname}}}%
1796      \list{[\arabic{enumi}]}{\settowidth\labelwidth{[#1]}%
1797        \leftmargin\labelwidth
1798        \advance\leftmargin\labelsep
1799        \usecounter{enumi}}%
1800        \def\newblock{\hskip.11em plus.33em minus.07em}%
1801        \sloppy\clubpenalty4000\widowpenalty\clubpenalty
1802        \sfcode`\.=1000\relax}}{}
1803 \@ifundefined{indexname}%
1804     {\def\theindex{\@restonecoltrue\if@twocolumn\@restonecolfalse\fi
1805      \columnseprule \z@
1806      \columnsep 35pt\twocolumn[\section*{\indexname}]%
1807        \@mkboth{\uppercase{\indexname}}{\uppercase{\indexname}}%
1808        \thispagestyle{plain}%
1809        \parskip\z@ plus.3pt\parindent\z@\let\item\@idxitem}}{}
```

The `abstract` environment:

```
1810 \@ifundefined{abstractname}%
1811     {\def\abstract{\if@twocolumn
1812     \section*{\abstractname}%
1813     \else \small
1814     \begin{center}%
1815     {\bf \abstractname\vspace{-.5em}\vspace{\z@}}%
```

---

[30]A fact that was pointed out to me by Nico Poppelier and was already used in Piet van Oostrum's document style option `nl`.

```
1816      \end{center}%
1817      \quotation
1818      \fi}}{}
```

And last but not least, the macro \part:

```
1819 \@ifundefined{partname}%
1820 {\def\@part[#1]#2{\ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
1821         \refstepcounter{part}%
1822         \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{\thepart
1823         \hspace{1em}#1}\else
1824      \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}\fi
1825   {\parindent\z@ \raggedright
1826    \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
1827      \Large \bf \partname{} \thepart
1828      \par \nobreak
1829    \fi
1830    \huge \bf
1831    #2\markboth{}{}\par}%
1832    \nobreak
1833    \vskip 3ex\@afterheading}%
1834 }{}
```

This is all that needs to be done for the article style.

```
1835 \or
```

The next case is formed by the two styles book and report. Basically we have to do the same as for the article style, except now we must also change the \chapter command.

The tables of contents, figures and tables:

```
1836 \@ifundefined{contentsname}%
1837     {\def\tableofcontents{\@restonecolfalse
1838       \if@twocolumn\@restonecoltrue\onecolumn
1839       \fi\chapter*{\contentsname\@mkboth
1840         {\uppercase{\contentsname}}{\uppercase{\contentsname}}}%
1841       \@starttoc{toc}%
1842       \csname if@restonecol\endcsname\twocolumn
1843       \csname fi\endcsname}}{}
1844 \@ifundefined{listfigurename}%
1845     {\def\listoffigures{\@restonecolfalse
1846       \if@twocolumn\@restonecoltrue\onecolumn
1847       \fi\chapter*{\listfigurename\@mkboth
1848         {\uppercase{\listfigurename}}{\uppercase{\listfigurename}}}%
1849       \@starttoc{lof}%
1850       \csname if@restonecol\endcsname\twocolumn
1851       \csname fi\endcsname}}{}
1852 \@ifundefined{listtablename}%
1853     {\def\listoftables{\@restonecolfalse
1854       \if@twocolumn\@restonecoltrue\onecolumn
1855       \fi\chapter*{\listtablename\@mkboth
1856         {\uppercase{\listtablename}}{\uppercase{\listtablename}}}%
1857       \@starttoc{lot}%
1858       \csname if@restonecol\endcsname\twocolumn
1859       \csname fi\endcsname}}{}
```

Again, the bibliography and index environments; notice that in this case we use \bibname instead of \refname as in the definitions for the article style. The reason for this is that in the article document style the term 'References' is used

in the definition of \thebibliography. In the report and book document styles
the term 'Bibliography' is used.

```
1860 \@ifundefined{bibname}%
1861     {\def\thebibliography#1{\chapter*{\bibname
1862      \@mkboth{\uppercase{\bibname}}{\uppercase{\bibname}}}%
1863      \list{[\arabic{enumi}]}{\settowidth\labelwidth{[#1]}%
1864      \leftmargin\labelwidth \advance\leftmargin\labelsep
1865      \usecounter{enumi}}%
1866      \def\newblock{\hskip.11em plus.33em minus.07em}%
1867      \sloppy\clubpenalty4000\widowpenalty\clubpenalty
1868      \sfcode`\.=1000\relax}}{}
1869 \@ifundefined{indexname}%
1870     {\def\theindex{\@restonecoltrue\if@twocolumn\@restonecolfalse\fi
1871      \columnseprule \z@
1872      \columnsep 35pt\twocolumn[\@makeschapterhead{\indexname}]%
1873       \@mkboth{\uppercase{\indexname}}{\uppercase{\indexname}}%
1874      \thispagestyle{plain}%
1875      \parskip\z@ plus.3pt\parindent\z@ \let\item\@idxitem}}{}
```

Here is the abstract environment:

```
1876 \@ifundefined{abstractname}%
1877     {\def\abstract{\titlepage
1878     \null\vfil
1879     \begin{center}%
1880     {\bf \abstractname}%
1881     \end{center}}}{}
```

And last but not least the \chapter, \appendix and \part macros.

```
1882 \@ifundefined{chaptername}{\def\@chapapp{\chaptername}}{}
1883 %
1884 \@ifundefined{appendixname}%
1885     {\def\appendix{\par
1886      \setcounter{chapter}{0}%
1887      \setcounter{section}{0}%
1888      \def\@chapapp{\appendixname}%
1889      \def\thechapter{\Alph{chapter}}}}{}
1890 %
1891 \@ifundefined{partname}%
1892     {\def\@part[#1]#2{\ifnum \c@secnumdepth >-2\relax
1893          \refstepcounter{part}%
1894          \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{\thepart
1895          \hspace{1em}#1}\else
1896          \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}\fi
1897        \markboth{}{}%
1898        {\centering
1899         \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >-2\relax
1900           \huge\bf \partname{} \thepart
1901         \par
1902         \vskip 20pt \fi
1903         \Huge \bf
1904         #1\par}\@endpart}}{}%
1905 \or
```

Now we address the case where babel.def is read after the letter style. The
letter document style defines the macro \opening and some other macros that
are specific to letter. This means that we have to redefine other macros,
compared to the previous two cases.

First two macros for the material at the end of a letter, the \cc and \encl macros.

```
1906 \@ifundefined{ccname}%
1907     {\def\cc#1{\par\noindent
1908      \parbox[t]{\textwidth}%
1909      {\@hangfrom{\rm \ccname : }\ignorespaces #1\strut}\par}}{}
1910 \@ifundefined{enclname}%
1911     {\def\encl#1{\par\noindent
1912      \parbox[t]{\textwidth}%
1913      {\@hangfrom{\rm \enclname : }\ignorespaces #1\strut}\par}}{}
```

The last thing we have to do here is to redefine the headings pagestyle:

```
1914 \@ifundefined{headtoname}%
1915   {\def\ps@headings{%
1916     \def\@oddhead{\sl \headtoname{} \ignorespaces\toname \hfil
1917                     \@date \hfil \pagename{} \thepage}%
1918     \def\@oddfoot{}}}{}
```

This was the last of the four standard document styles, so if \doc@style has another value we do nothing and just close the if construction.

```
1919 \fi
1920 ⟨/names⟩
```

Here ends the code that can be optionally included when a version of LaTeX is in use that is dated *before* December 1991.
We also need to redefine a number of commands to ensure that the right font encoding is used, but this can't be done before babel.def is loaded.

10   Multiple languages

Plain TeX version 3.0 provides the primitive \language that is used to store the current language. When used with a pre-3.0 version this function has to be implemented by allocating a counter.

```
1921 ⟨∗kernel⟩
1922 ⟨⟨Make sure ProvidesFile is defined⟩⟩
1923 \ProvidesFile{switch.def}[⟨⟨date⟩⟩ ⟨⟨version⟩⟩ Babel switching mechanism]
1924 ⟨⟨Load macros for plain if not LaTeX⟩⟩
1925 ⟨⟨Define core switching macros⟩⟩
```

\adddialect   The macro \adddialect can be used to add the name of a dialect or variant language, for which an already defined hyphenation table can be used.

```
1926 \def\bbl@version{⟨⟨version⟩⟩}
1927 \def\bbl@date{⟨⟨date⟩⟩}
1928 \def\adddialect#1#2{%
1929   \global\chardef#1#2\relax
1930   \bbl@usehooks{adddialect}{{#1}{#2}}%
1931   \wlog{\string#1 = a dialect from \string\language#2}}
```

\bbl@iflanguage executes code only of the language exists. Otherwise raises and error.
The argument of \bbl@fixname has to be a macro name, as it may get "fixed" if casing (lc/uc) is wrong. It's intented to fix a long-standing bug when \foreignlanguage and the like appear in a \MakeXXXcase. However, a lowercase form is not imposed to improve backward compatibility (perhaps you defined a language named MYLANG, but unfortunately mixed case names cannot be trapped).

```
1932 \def\bbl@fixname#1{%
```

```
1933   \begingroup
1934     \def\bbl@tempe{l@}%
1935     \edef\bbl@tempd{\noexpand\@ifundefined{\noexpand\bbl@tempe#1}}%
1936     \bbl@tempd
1937       {\lowercase\expandafter{\bbl@tempd}%
1938         {\uppercase\expandafter{\bbl@tempd}%
1939           \@empty
1940           {\edef\bbl@tempd{\def\noexpand#1{#1}}%
1941            \uppercase\expandafter{\bbl@tempd}}}%
1942        {\edef\bbl@tempd{\def\noexpand#1{#1}}%
1943         \lowercase\expandafter{\bbl@tempd}}}%
1944       \@empty
1945     \edef\bbl@tempd{\endgroup\def\noexpand#1{#1}}%
1946   \bbl@tempd}
1947 \def\bbl@iflanguage#1{%
1948   \@ifundefined{l@#1}{\@nolanerr{#1}\@gobble}\@firstofone}
```

\iflanguage   Users might want to test (in a private package for instance) which language is currently active. For this we provide a test macro, \iflanguage, that has three arguments. It checks whether the first argument is a known language. If so, it compares the first argument with the value of \language. Then, depending on the result of the comparison, it executes either the second or the third argument.

```
1949 \def\iflanguage#1{%
1950   \bbl@iflanguage{#1}{%
1951     \ifnum\csname l@#1\endcsname=\language
1952       \expandafter\@firstoftwo
1953     \else
1954       \expandafter\@secondoftwo
1955     \fi}}
```

10.1   Selecting the language

\selectlanguage   The macro \selectlanguage checks whether the language is already defined before it performs its actual task, which is to update \language and activate language-specific definitions.

To allow the call of \selectlanguage either with a control sequence name or with a simple string as argument, we have to use a trick to delete the optional escape character.

To convert a control sequence to a string, we use the \string primitive. Next we have to look at the first character of this string and compare it with the escape character. Because this escape character can be changed by setting the internal integer \escapechar to a character number, we have to compare this number with the character of the string. To do this we have to use TeX's backquote notation to specify the character as a number.

If the first character of the \string'ed argument is the current escape character, the comparison has stripped this character and the rest in the 'then' part consists of the rest of the control sequence name. Otherwise we know that either the argument is not a control sequence or \escapechar is set to a value outside of the character range 0–255.

If the user gives an empty argument, we provide a default argument for \string. This argument should expand to nothing.

```
1956 \let\bbl@select@type\z@
1957 \edef\selectlanguage{%
```

```
1958    \noexpand\protect
1959    \expandafter\noexpand\csname selectlanguage \endcsname}
```

Because the command `\selectlanguage` could be used in a moving argument it expands to `\protect\selectlanguage␣`. Therefore, we have to make sure that a macro `\protect` exists. If it doesn't it is `\let` to `\relax`.

```
1960 \ifx\@undefined\protect\let\protect\relax\fi
```

As LATEX 2.09 writes to files *expanded* whereas LATEX 2$_\varepsilon$ takes care *not* to expand the arguments of `\write` statements we need to be a bit clever about the way we add information to `.aux` files. Therefore we introduce the macro `\xstring` which should expand to the right amount of `\string`'s.

```
1961 \ifx\documentclass\@undefined
1962    \def\xstring{\string\string\string}
1963 \else
1964    \let\xstring\string
1965 \fi
```

Since version 3.5 babel writes entries to the auxiliary files in order to typeset table of contents etc. in the correct language environment.

\bbl@pop@language   *But* when the language change happens *inside* a group the end of the group doesn't write anything to the auxiliary files. Therefore we need TEX's `aftergroup` mechanism to help us. The command `\aftergroup` stores the token immediately following it to be executed when the current group is closed. So we define a temporary control sequence `\bbl@pop@language` to be executed at the end of the group. It calls `\bbl@set@language` with the name of the current language as its argument.

\bbl@language@stack   The previous solution works for one level of nesting groups, but as soon as more levels are used it is no longer adequate. For that case we need to keep track of the nested languages using a stack mechanism. This stack is called `\bbl@language@stack` and initially empty.

```
1966 \def\bbl@language@stack{}
```

When using a stack we need a mechanism to push an element on the stack and to retrieve the information afterwards.

\bbl@push@language   The stack is simply a list of languagenames, separated with a '+' sign; the push
\bbl@pop@language   function can be simple:

```
1967 \def\bbl@push@language{%
1968    \xdef\bbl@language@stack{\languagename+\bbl@language@stack}}
```

Retrieving information from the stack is a little bit less simple, as we need to remove the element from the stack while storing it in the macro `\languagename`. For this we first define a helper function.

\bbl@pop@lang   This macro stores its first element (which is delimited by the '+'-sign) in `\languagename` and stores the rest of the string (delimited by '-') in its third argument.

```
1969 \def\bbl@pop@lang#1+#2-#3{%
1970    \edef\languagename{#1}\xdef#3{#2}}
```

The reason for the somewhat weird arrangement of arguments to the helper function is the fact it is called in the following way. This means that before `\bbl@pop@lang` is executed TEX first *expands* the stack, stored in `\bbl@language@stack`. The result of that is that the argument string of

94

\bbl@pop@lang contains one or more language names, each followed by a '+'-sign (zero language names won't occur as this macro will only be called after something has been pushed on the stack) followed by the '-'-sign and finally the reference to the stack.

```
1971 \def\bbl@pop@language{%
1972    \expandafter\bbl@pop@lang\bbl@language@stack-\bbl@language@stack
1973    \expandafter\bbl@set@language\expandafter{\languagename}}
```

Once the name of the previous language is retrieved from the stack, it is fed to \bbl@set@language to do the actual work of switching everything that needs switching.

```
1974 \expandafter\def\csname selectlanguage \endcsname#1{%
1975    \ifnum\bbl@hymapsel=\@cclv\let\bbl@hymapsel\tw@\fi
1976    \bbl@push@language
1977    \aftergroup\bbl@pop@language
1978    \bbl@set@language{#1}}
```

\bbl@set@language   The macro \bbl@set@language takes care of switching the language environment *and* of writing entries on the auxiliary files. For historial reasons, language names can be either language of \language. To catch either form a trick is used, but unfortunately as a side effect the catcodes of letters in \languagename are not well defined. The list of auxiliary files can be extended by redefining \BabelContentsFiles, but make sure they are loaded inside a group (as aux, toc, lof, and lot do) or the last language of the document will remain active afterwards.

We also write a command to change the current language in the auxiliary files.

```
1979 \def\BabelContentsFiles{toc,lof,lot}
1980 \def\bbl@set@language#1{%
1981    \edef\languagename{%
1982      \ifnum\escapechar=\expandafter'\string#1\@empty
1983      \else\string#1\@empty\fi}%
1984    \select@language{\languagename}%
1985    \expandafter\ifx\csname date\languagename\endcsname\relax\else
1986      \if@filesw
1987        \protected@write\@auxout{}{\string\select@language{\languagename}}%
1988        \bbl@for\bbl@tempa\BabelContentsFiles{%
1989          \addtocontents{\bbl@tempa}{\xstring\select@language{\languagename}}}%
1990        \bbl@usehooks{write}{}%
1991      \fi
1992    \fi}
1993 \def\select@language#1{%
1994    \ifnum\bbl@hymapsel=\@cclv\chardef\bbl@hymapsel4\relax\fi
1995    \edef\languagename{#1}%
1996    \bbl@fixname\languagename
1997    \bbl@iflanguage\languagename{%
1998      \expandafter\ifx\csname date\languagename\endcsname\relax
1999        \bbl@error
2000          {Unknown language '#1'. Either you have\\%
2001           misspelled its name, it has not been installed,\\%
2002           or you requested it in a previous run. Fix its name,\\%
2003           install it or just rerun the file, respectively}%
2004          {You may proceed, but expect unexpected results}%
2005      \else
2006        \let\bbl@select@type\z@
2007        \expandafter\bbl@switch\expandafter{\languagename}%
```

95

```
2008      \fi}}
2009 % A bit of optimization:
2010 \def\select@language@x#1{%
2011    \ifcase\bbl@select@type
2012      \bbl@ifsamestring\languagename{#1}{}{\select@language{#1}}%
2013    \else
2014      \select@language{#1}%
2015    \fi}
```

First, check if the user asks for a known language. If so, update the value of \language and call \originalTeX to bring TeX in a certain pre-defined state.

The name of the language is stored in the control sequence \languagename. Then we have to *re*define \originalTeX to compensate for the things that have been activated. To save memory space for the macro definition of \originalTeX, we construct the control sequence name for the \noextras⟨*lang*⟩ command at definition time by expanding the \csname primitive.
Now activate the language-specific definitions. This is done by constructing the names of three macros by concatenating three words with the argument of \selectlanguage, and calling these macros.
The switching of the values of \lefthyphenmin and \righthyphenmin is somewhat different. First we save their current values, then we check if \⟨*lang*⟩hyphenmins is defined. If it is not, we set default values (2 and 3), otherwise the values in \⟨*lang*⟩hyphenmins will be used.

```
2016 \def\bbl@switch#1{%
2017    \originalTeX
2018    \expandafter\def\expandafter\originalTeX\expandafter{%
2019      \csname noextras#1\endcsname
2020      \let\originalTeX\@empty
2021      \babel@beginsave}%
2022    \bbl@usehooks{afterreset}{}%
2023    \languageshorthands{none}%
2024    \ifcase\bbl@select@type
2025      \csname captions#1\endcsname
2026      \csname date#1\endcsname
2027    \fi
2028    \bbl@usehooks{beforeextras}{}%
2029    \csname extras#1\endcsname\relax
2030    \bbl@usehooks{afterextras}{}%
2031    \ifcase\bbl@hymapopt\or
2032      \def\BabelLower##1##2{\lccode##1=##2\relax}%
2033      \ifnum\bbl@hymapsel>4\else
2034        \csname\languagename @bbl@hyphenmap\endcsname
2035      \fi
2036      \chardef\bbl@hymapopt\z@
2037    \else
2038      \ifnum\bbl@hymapsel>\bbl@hymapopt\else
2039        \csname\languagename @bbl@hyphenmap\endcsname
2040      \fi
2041    \fi
2042    \global\let\bbl@hymapsel\@cclv
2043    \bbl@patterns{#1}%
2044    \babel@savevariable\lefthyphenmin
2045    \babel@savevariable\righthyphenmin
2046    \expandafter\ifx\csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
```

```
2047        \set@hyphenmins\tw@\thr@@\relax
2048    \else
2049        \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\set@hyphenmins
2050          \csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
2051    \fi}
2052 \def\bbl@ifsamestring#1#2{%
2053    \protected@edef\bbl@tempb{#1}%
2054    \edef\bbl@tempb{\expandafter\strip@prefix\meaning\bbl@tempb}%
2055    \protected@edef\bbl@tempc{#2}%
2056    \edef\bbl@tempc{\expandafter\strip@prefix\meaning\bbl@tempc}%
2057    \ifx\bbl@tempb\bbl@tempc
2058        \expandafter\@firstoftwo
2059    \else
2060        \expandafter\@secondoftwo
2061    \fi}
```

otherlanguage The otherlanguage environment can be used as an alternative to using the
\selectlanguage declarative command. When you are typesetting a document
which mixes left-to-right and right-to-left typesetting you have to use this
environment in order to let things work as you expect them to.
The first thing this environment does is store the name of the language in
\languagename; it then calls \selectlanguage␣ to switch on everything that is
needed for this language The \ignorespaces command is necessary to hide the
environment when it is entered in horizontal mode.

```
2062 \long\def\otherlanguage#1{%
2063    \ifnum\bbl@hymapsel=\@cclv\let\bbl@hymapsel\thr@@\fi
2064    \csname selectlanguage \endcsname{#1}%
2065    \ignorespaces}
```

The \endotherlanguage part of the environment tries to hide itself when it is
called in horizontal mode.

```
2066 \long\def\endotherlanguage{%
2067    \global\@ignoretrue\ignorespaces}
```

otherlanguage* The otherlanguage environment is meant to be used when a large part of text from
a different language needs to be typeset, but without changing the translation of
words such as 'figure'. This environment makes use of \foreign@language.

```
2068 \expandafter\def\csname otherlanguage*\endcsname#1{%
2069    \ifnum\bbl@hymapsel=\@cclv\chardef\bbl@hymapsel4\relax\fi
2070    \foreign@language{#1}}
```

At the end of the environment we need to switch off the extra definitions. The
grouping mechanism of the environment will take care of resetting the correct
hyphenation rules and "extras".

```
2071 \expandafter\let\csname endotherlanguage*\endcsname\relax
```

\foreignlanguage The \foreignlanguage command is another substitute for the \selectlanguage
command. This command takes two arguments, the first argument is the name of
the language to use for typesetting the text specified in the second argument.
Unlike \selectlanguage this command doesn't switch *everything*, it only switches
the hyphenation rules and the extra definitions for the language specified. It does
this within a group and assumes the \extras⟨lang⟩ command doesn't make any
\global changes. The coding is very similar to part of \selectlanguage.

```
2072 \edef\foreignlanguage{%
2073    \noexpand\protect
```

```
2074    \expandafter\noexpand\csname foreignlanguage \endcsname}
2075 \expandafter\def\csname foreignlanguage \endcsname#1#2{%
2076    \begingroup
2077      \foreign@language{#1}%
2078      #2%
2079    \endgroup}
```

\foreign@language This macro does the work for \foreignlanguage and the otherlanguage*
environment. First we need to store the name of the language and check that it is
a known language. Then it just calls bbl@switch.

```
2080 \def\foreign@language#1{%
2081    \edef\languagename{#1}%
2082    \bbl@fixname\languagename
2083    \bbl@iflanguage\languagename{%
2084      \expandafter\ifx\csname date\languagename\endcsname\relax
2085        \bbl@warning
2086          {You haven't loaded the language \languagename\space yet\\%
2087           I'll proceed, but expect unexpected results.\\%
2088           Reported}%
2089      \fi
2090      \let\bbl@select@type\@ne
2091      \expandafter\bbl@switch\expandafter{\languagename}}}
```

\bbl@patterns This macro selects the hyphenation patterns by changing the \language register.
If special hyphenation patterns are available specifically for the current font
encoding, use them instead of the default.
It also sets hyphenation exceptions, but only once, because they are global (here
language \lccode's has been set, too). \bbl@hyphenation@ is set to relax until the
very first \babelhyphenation, so do nothing with this value. If the exceptions for a
language (by its number, not its name, so that :ENC is taken into account) has been
set, then use \hyphenation with both global and language exceptions and empty
the latter to mark they must not be set again.

```
2092 \let\bbl@hyphlist\@empty
2093 \let\bbl@hyphenation@\relax
2094 \let\bbl@pttnlist\@empty
2095 \let\bbl@patterns@\relax
2096 \let\bbl@hymapsel=\@cclv
2097 \def\bbl@patterns#1{%
2098    \language=\expandafter\ifx\csname l@#1:\f@encoding\endcsname\relax
2099        \csname l@#1\endcsname
2100        \edef\bbl@tempa{#1}%
2101      \else
2102        \csname l@#1:\f@encoding\endcsname
2103        \edef\bbl@tempa{#1:\f@encoding}%
2104      \fi\relax
2105    \@expandtwoargs\bbl@usehooks{patterns}{{#1}{\bbl@tempa}}%
2106    \@ifundefined{bbl@hyphenation@}{}{%
2107      \begingroup
2108        \@expandtwoargs\in@{,\number\language,}{,\bbl@hyphlist}%
2109        \ifin@\else
2110          \@expandtwoargs\bbl@usehooks{hyphenation}{{#1}{\bbl@tempa}}%
2111          \hyphenation{%
2112            \bbl@hyphenation@
2113            \@ifundefined{bbl@hyphenation@#1}%
2114              \@empty
```

```
2115          {\space\csname bbl@hyphenation@#1\endcsname}}%
2116       \xdef\bbl@hyphlist{\bbl@hyphlist\number\language,}%
2117     \fi
2118   \endgroup}}
```

hyphenrules The environment hyphenrules can be used to select *just* the hyphenation rules.
This environment does *not* change \languagename and when the hyphenation
rules specified were not loaded it has no effect. Note however, \lccode's and font
encodings are not set at all, so in most cases you should use otherlanguage*.

```
2119 \def\hyphenrules#1{%
2120   \edef\languagename{#1}%
2121   \bbl@fixname\languagename
2122   \bbl@iflanguage\languagename{%
2123     \expandafter\bbl@patterns\expandafter{\languagename}%
2124     \languageshorthands{none}%
2125     \expandafter\ifx\csname\languagename hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
2126       \set@hyphenmins\tw@\thr@@\relax
2127     \else
2128       \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\set@hyphenmins
2129       \csname\languagename hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
2130     \fi}}
2131 \let\endhyphenrules\@empty
```

\providehyphenmins The macro \providehyphenmins should be used in the language definition files to
provide a *default* setting for the hyphenation parameters \lefthyphenmin and
\righthyphenmin. If the macro \⟨lang⟩hyphenmins is already defined this
command has no effect.

```
2132 \def\providehyphenmins#1#2{%
2133   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
2134     \@namedef{#1hyphenmins}{#2}%
2135   \fi}
```

\set@hyphenmins This macro sets the values of \lefthyphenmin and \righthyphenmin. It expects
two values as its argument.

```
2136 \def\set@hyphenmins#1#2{\lefthyphenmin#1\relax\righthyphenmin#2\relax}
```

\ProvidesLanguage The identification code for each file is something that was introduced in LATEX 2ε.
When the command \ProvidesFile does not exist, a dummy definition is provided
temporarily. For use in the language definition file the command
\ProvidesLanguage is defined by babel.
Depending on the format, ie, on if the former is defined, we use a similar definition
or not.

```
2137 \ifx\ProvidesFile\@undefined
2138   \def\ProvidesLanguage#1[#2 #3 #4]{%
2139     \wlog{Language: #1 #4 #3 <#2>}%
2140     }
2141 \else
2142   \def\ProvidesLanguage#1{%
2143     \begingroup
2144       \catcode'\ 10 %
2145       \@makeother\/%
2146       \@ifnextchar[%
2147         {\@provideslanguage{#1}}{\@provideslanguage{#1}[]}}
2148   \def\@provideslanguage#1[#2]{%
2149     \wlog{Language: #1 #2}%
```

```
2150       \expandafter\xdef\csname ver@#1.ldf\endcsname{#2}%
2151     \endgroup}
2152 \fi
```

\LdfInit   This macro is defined in two versions. The first version is to be part of the 'kernel'
            of babel, ie. the part that is loaded in the format; the second version is defined in
            babel.def. The version in the format just checks the category code of the
            ampersand and then loads babel.def.
            The category code of the ampersand is restored and the macro calls itself again
            with the new definition from babel.def

```
2153 \def\LdfInit{%
2154     \chardef\atcatcode=\catcode'\@
2155     \catcode'\@=11\relax
2156     \input babel.def\relax
2157     \catcode'\@=\atcatcode \let\atcatcode\relax
2158     \LdfInit}
```

\originalTeX   The macro\originalTeX should be known to TeX at this moment. As it has to be
               expandable we \let it to \@empty instead of \relax.

```
2159 \ifx\originalTeX\@undefined\let\originalTeX\@empty\fi
```

Because this part of the code can be included in a format, we make sure that the
macro which initialises the save mechanism, \babel@beginsave, is not considered
to be undefined.

```
2160 \ifx\babel@beginsave\@undefined\let\babel@beginsave\relax\fi
```

A few macro names are reserved for future releases of babel, which will use the
concept of âĂŸlocaleâĂŹ:

```
2161 \newcommand\setlocale{%
2162     \bbl@error
2163       {Not yet available}%
2164       {Find an armchair, sit down and wait}}
2165 \let\uselocale\setlocale
2166 \let\locale\setlocale
2167 \let\selectlocale\setlocale
2168 \let\textlocale\setlocale
2169 \let\textlanguage\setlocale
2170 \let\languagetext\setlocale
```

10.2 Errors

\@nolanerr   The babel package will signal an error when a documents tries to select a
\@nopatterns language that hasn't been defined earlier. When a user selects a language for
              which no hyphenation patterns were loaded into the format he will be given a
              warning about that fact. We revert to the patterns for \language=0 in that case.
              In most formats that will be (US)english, but it might also be empty.

\@noopterr   When the package was loaded without options not everything will work as
              expected. An error message is issued in that case.
              When the format knows about \PackageError it must be LaTeX 2$_\varepsilon$, so we can safely
              use its error handling interface. Otherwise we'll have to 'keep it simple'.

```
2171 \edef\bbl@nulllanguage{\string\language=0}
2172 \ifx\PackageError\@undefined
2173     \def\bbl@error#1#2{%
2174       \begingroup
```

```
2175        \newlinechar='\^^J
2176        \def\\{^^J(babel) }%
2177        \errhelp{#2}\errmessage{\\#1}%
2178      \endgroup}
2179    \def\bbl@warning#1{%
2180      \begingroup
2181        \newlinechar='\^^J
2182        \def\\{^^J(babel) }%
2183        \message{\\#1}%
2184      \endgroup}
2185    \def\bbl@info#1{%
2186      \begingroup
2187        \newlinechar='\^^J
2188        \def\\{^^J}%
2189        \wlog{#1}%
2190      \endgroup}
2191  \else
2192    \def\bbl@error#1#2{%
2193      \begingroup
2194        \def\\{\MessageBreak}%
2195        \PackageError{babel}{#1}{#2}%
2196      \endgroup}
2197    \def\bbl@warning#1{%
2198      \begingroup
2199        \def\\{\MessageBreak}%
2200        \PackageWarning{babel}{#1}%
2201      \endgroup}
2202    \def\bbl@info#1{%
2203      \begingroup
2204        \def\\{\MessageBreak}%
2205        \PackageInfo{babel}{#1}%
2206      \endgroup}
2207  \fi
2208  \@ifpackagewith{babel}{silent}
2209    {\let\bbl@info\@gobble
2210     \let\bbl@warning\@gobble}
2211    {}
2212  \def\@nolanerr#1{%
2213    \bbl@error
2214      {You haven't defined the language #1\space yet}%
2215      {Your command will be ignored, type <return> to proceed}}
2216  \def\@nopatterns#1{%
2217    \bbl@warning
2218      {No hyphenation patterns were preloaded for\\%
2219       the language '#1' into the format.\\%
2220       Please, configure your TeX system to add them and\\%
2221       rebuild the format. Now I will use the patterns\\%
2222       preloaded for \bbl@nulllanguage\space instead}}
2223  \let\bbl@usehooks\@gobbletwo
2224  ⟨/kernel⟩
```

11 Loading hyphenation patterns

The following code is meant to be read by iniTeX because it should instruct TeX to read hyphenation patterns. To this end the docstrip option patterns can be used

to include this code in the file `hyphen.cfg`. Code is written with lower level macros.

`toks8` stores info to be shown when the program is run.

We want to add a message to the message LaTeX 2.09 puts in the `\everyjob` register. This could be done by the following code:

```
%    \let\orgeveryjob\everyjob
%    \def\everyjob#1{%
%      \orgeveryjob{#1}%
%      \orgeveryjob\expandafter{\the\orgeveryjob\immediate\write16{%
%          hyphenation patterns for \the\loaded@patterns loaded.}}%
%      \let\everyjob\orgeveryjob\let\orgeveryjob\@undefined}
%
```

The code above redefines the control sequence `\everyjob` in order to be able to add something to the current contents of the register. This is necessary because the processing of hyphenation patterns happens long before LaTeX fills the register. There are some problems with this approach though.

- When someone wants to use several hyphenation patterns with SLiTeX the above scheme won't work. The reason is that SLiTeX overwrites the contents of the `\everyjob` register with its own message.

- Plain TeX does not use the `\everyjob` register so the message would not be displayed.

To circumvent this a 'dirty trick' can be used. As this code is only processed when creating a new format file there is one command that is sure to be used, `\dump`. Therefore the original `\dump` is saved in `\org@dump` and a new definition is supplied.

To make sure that LaTeX 2.09 executes the `\@begindocumenthook` we would want to alter `\begin{document}`, but as this done too often already, we add the new code at the front of `\@preamblecmds`. But we can only do that after it has been defined, so we add this piece of code to `\dump`.

This new definition starts by adding an instruction to write a message on the terminal and in the transcript file to inform the user of the preloaded hyphenation patterns.

Then everything is restored to the old situation and the format is dumped.

```
2225 ⟨∗patterns⟩
2226 ⟨⟨Make sure ProvidesFile is defined⟩⟩
2227 \ProvidesFile{hyphen.cfg}[⟨⟨date⟩⟩ ⟨⟨version⟩⟩ Babel hyphens]
2228 \xdef\bbl@format{\jobname}
2229 \ifx\AtBeginDocument\@undefined
2230   \def\@empty{}
2231   \let\orig@dump\dump
2232   \def\dump{%
2233     \ifx\@ztryfc\@undefined
2234     \else
2235       \toks0=\expandafter{\@preamblecmds}%
2236       \edef\@preamblecmds{\noexpand\@begindocumenthook\the\toks0}%
2237       \def\@begindocumenthook{}%
2238     \fi
2239     \let\dump\orig@dump\let\orig@dump\@undefined\dump}
2240 \fi
2241 ⟨⟨Define core switching macros⟩⟩
2242 \toks8{Babel «@version@» and hyphenation patterns for }%
```

\process@line Each line in the file `language.dat` is processed by `\process@line` after it is read.
The first thing this macro does is to check whether the line starts with =. When the
first token of a line is an =, the macro `\process@synonym` is called; otherwise the
macro `\process@language` will continue.

```
2243 \def\process@line#1#2 #3 #4 {%
2244   \ifx=#1%
2245     \process@synonym{#2}%
2246   \else
2247     \process@language{#1#2}{#3}{#4}%
2248   \fi
2249   \ignorespaces}
```

\process@synonym This macro takes care of the lines which start with an =. It needs an empty token
register to begin with. `\bbl@languages` is also set to empty.

```
2250 \toks@{}
2251 \def\bbl@languages{}
```

When no languages have been loaded yet, the name following the = will be a
synonym for hyphenation register 0. So, it is stored in a token register and
executed when the first pattern file has been processed. (The `\relax` just helps to
the `\if` below catching synonyms without a language.)
Otherwise the name will be a synonym for the language loaded last.
We also need to copy the hyphenmin parameters for the synonym.

```
2252 \def\process@synonym#1{%
2253   \ifnum\last@language=\m@ne
2254     \toks@\expandafter{\the\toks@\relax\process@synonym{#1}}%
2255   \else
2256     \expandafter\chardef\csname l@#1\endcsname\last@language
2257     \wlog{\string\l@#1=\string\language\the\last@language}%
2258     \expandafter\let\csname #1hyphenmins\expandafter\endcsname
2259       \csname\languagename hyphenmins\endcsname
2260     \let\bbl@elt\relax
2261     \edef\bbl@languages{\bbl@languages\bbl@elt{#1}{\the\last@language}{}{}}%
2262   \fi}
```

\process@language The macro `\process@language` is used to process a non-empty line from the
'configuration file'. It has three arguments, each delimited by white space. The
first argument is the 'name' of a language; the second is the name of the file that
contains the patterns. The optional third argument is the name of a file containing
hyphenation exceptions.
The first thing to do is call `\addlanguage` to allocate a pattern register and to
make that register 'active'. Then the 'name' of the language that will be loaded
now is added to the token register `\toks8`. and finally the pattern file is read.
For some hyphenation patterns it is needed to load them with a specific font
encoding selected. This can be specified in the file `language.dat` by adding for
instance ':T1' to the name of the language. The macro `\bbl@get@enc` extracts the
font encoding from the language name and stores it in `\bbl@hyph@enc`. The latter
can be used in hyphenation files if you need to set a behaviour depending on the
given encoding (it is set to empty if no encoding is given).
Pattern files may contain assignments to `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin`.
TeX does not keep track of these assignments. Therefore we try to detect such
assignments and store them in the `\⟨lang⟩hyphenmins` macro. When no
assignments were made we provide a default setting.

103

Some pattern files contain changes to the \lccode en \uccode arrays. Such changes should remain local to the language; therefore we process the pattern file in a group; the \patterns command acts globally so its effect will be remembered. Then we globally store the settings of \lefthyphenmin and \righthyphenmin and close the group.

When the hyphenation patterns have been processed we need to see if a file with hyphenation exceptions needs to be read. This is the case when the third argument is not empty and when it does not contain a space token. (Note however there is no need to save hyphenation exceptions into the format.)

\bbl@languages saves a snapshot of the loaded languagues in the form \bbl@elt{⟨language-name⟩}{⟨number⟩} {⟨patterns-file⟩}{⟨exceptions-file⟩}. Note the last 2 arguments are empty in 'dialects' defined in language.dat with =. Note also the language name can have encoding info.

Finally, if the counter \language is equal to zero we execute the synonyms stored.

```
2263 \def\process@language#1#2#3{%
2264   \expandafter\addlanguage\csname l@#1\endcsname
2265   \expandafter\language\csname l@#1\endcsname
2266   \edef\languagename{#1}%
2267   \bbl@hook@everylanguage{#1}%
2268   \bbl@get@enc#1::\@@@
2269   \begingroup
2270     \lefthyphenmin\m@ne
2271     \bbl@hook@loadpatterns{#2}%
2272     \ifnum\lefthyphenmin=\m@ne
2273     \else
2274       \expandafter\xdef\csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname{%
2275         \the\lefthyphenmin\the\righthyphenmin}%
2276     \fi
2277   \endgroup
2278   \def\bbl@tempa{#3}%
2279   \ifx\bbl@tempa\@empty\else
2280     \bbl@hook@loadexceptions{#3}%
2281   \fi
2282   \let\bbl@elt\relax
2283   \edef\bbl@languages{%
2284     \bbl@languages\bbl@elt{#1}{\the\language}{#2}{\bbl@tempa}}%
2285   \ifnum\the\language=\z@
2286     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
2287       \set@hyphenmins\tw@\thr@@\relax
2288     \else
2289       \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\set@hyphenmins
2290         \csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname
2291     \fi
2292     \the\toks@
2293     \toks@{}%
2294   \fi}
```

\bbl@get@enc   The macro \bbl@get@enc extracts the font encoding from the language name and
\bbl@hyph@enc   stores it in \bbl@hyph@enc. It uses delimited arguments to achieve this.

```
2295 \def\bbl@get@enc#1:#2:#3\@@@{\def\bbl@hyph@enc{#2}}
```

Now, hooks are defined. For efficiency reasons, they are dealt here in a special way. Besides luatex, format specific configuration files are taken into account.

```
2296 \def\bbl@hook@everylanguage#1{}
```

104

```
2297 \def\bbl@hook@loadpatterns#1{\input #1\relax}
2298 \let\bbl@hook@loadexceptions\bbl@hook@loadpatterns
2299 \let\bbl@hook@loadkernel\bbl@hook@loadpatterns
2300 \begingroup
2301   \def\AddBabelHook#1#2{%
2302     \expandafter\ifx\csname bbl@hook@#2\endcsname\relax
2303       \def\next{\toks1}%
2304     \else
2305       \def\next{\expandafter\gdef\csname bbl@hook@#2\endcsname####1}%
2306     \fi
2307     \next}
2308   \ifx\directlua\@undefined
2309     \ifx\XeTeXinputencoding\@undefined\else
2310       \input xebabel.def
2311     \fi
2312   \else
2313     \input luababel.def
2314   \fi
2315   \openin1 = babel-\bbl@format.cfg
2316   \ifeof1
2317   \else
2318     \input babel-\bbl@format.cfg\relax
2319   \fi
2320   \closein1
2321 \endgroup
2322 \bbl@hook@loadkernel{switch.def}
```

\readconfigfile   The configuration file can now be opened for reading.

```
2323 \openin1 = language.dat
```

See if the file exists, if not, use the default hyphenation file `hyphen.tex`. The user will be informed about this.

```
2324 \def\languagename{english}%
2325 \ifeof1
2326   \message{I couldn't find the file language.dat,\space
2327           I will try the file hyphen.tex}
2328   \input hyphen.tex\relax
2329   \chardef\l@english\z@
2330 \else
```

Pattern registers are allocated using count register `\last@language`. Its initial value is 0. The definition of the macro `\newlanguage` is such that it first increments the count register and then defines the language. In order to have the first patterns loaded in pattern register number 0 we initialize `\last@language` with the value −1.

```
2331   \last@language\m@ne
```

We now read lines from the file until the end is found

```
2332   \loop
```

While reading from the input, it is useful to switch off recognition of the end-of-line character. This saves us stripping off spaces from the contents of the control sequence.

```
2333     \endlinechar\m@ne
2334     \read1 to \bbl@line
2335     \endlinechar'\^^M
```

105

If the file has reached its end, exit from the loop here. If not, empty lines are skipped. Add 3 space characters to the end of \bbl@line. This is needed to be able to recognize the arguments of \process@line later on. The default language should be the very first one.

```
2336      \if T\ifeof1F\fi T\relax
2337        \ifx\bbl@line\@empty\else
2338          \edef\bbl@line{\bbl@line\space\space\space}%
2339          \expandafter\process@line\bbl@line\relax
2340        \fi
2341    \repeat
```

Check for the end of the file. We must reverse the test for \ifeof without \else. Then reactivate the default patterns,

```
2342    \begingroup
2343      \def\bbl@elt#1#2#3#4{%
2344        \global\language=#2\relax
2345        \gdef\languagename{#1}%
2346        \def\bbl@elt##1##2##3##4{}}%
2347      \bbl@languages
2348    \endgroup
2349 \fi
```

and close the configuration file.

```
2350 \closein1
```

We add a message about the fact that babel is loaded in the format and with which language patterns to the \everyjob register.

```
2351 \if/\the\toks@/\else
2352   \errhelp{language.dat loads no language, only synonyms}
2353   \errmessage{Orphan language synonym}
2354 \fi
2355 \advance\last@language\@ne
2356 \edef\bbl@tempa{%
2357   \everyjob{%
2358     \the\everyjob
2359     \ifx\typeout\@undefined
2360       \immediate\write16%
2361     \else
2362       \noexpand\typeout
2363     \fi
2364     {\the\toks8 \the\last@language\space language(s) loaded.}}}
2365 \advance\last@language\m@ne
2366 \bbl@tempa
```

Also remove some macros from memory and raise an error if \toks@ is not empty. Finally load switch.def, but the letter is not required and the line inputting it may be commented out.

```
2367 \let\bbl@line\@undefined
2368 \let\process@line\@undefined
2369 \let\process@synonym\@undefined
2370 \let\process@language\@undefined
2371 \let\bbl@get@enc\@undefined
2372 \let\bbl@hyph@enc\@undefined
2373 \let\bbl@tempa\@undefined
2374 \let\bbl@hook@loadkernel\@undefined
2375 \let\bbl@hook@everylanguage\@undefined
2376 \let\bbl@hook@loadpatterns\@undefined
```

```
2377 \let\bbl@hook@loadexceptions\@undefined
2378 ⟨/patterns⟩
```

Here the code for iniTEX ends.

12   The 'nil' language

This 'language' does nothing, except setting the hyphenation patterns to nohyphenation.

For this language currently no special definitions are needed or available.

The macro \LdfInit takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the @ sign, etc.

```
2379 ⟨*nil⟩
2380 \ProvidesLanguage{nil}[⟨⟨date⟩⟩ ⟨⟨version⟩⟩ Nil language]
2381 \LdfInit{nil}{datenil}
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the \usepackage command, nil could be an 'unknown' language in which case we have to make it known.

```
2382 \ifx\l@nohyphenation\@undefined
2383     \@nopatterns{nil}
2384     \adddialect\l@nil0
2385 \else
2386     \let\l@nil\l@nohyphenation
2387 \fi
```

This macro is used to store the values of the hyphenation parameters \lefthyphenmin and \righthyphenmin.

```
2388 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\m@ne\m@ne}
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the 'nil' language.

`\captionnil`
`\datenil`
```
2389 \let\captionsnil\@empty
2390 \let\datenil\@empty
```

The macro \ldf@finish takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at \begin{document} and resetting the category code of @ to its original value.

```
2391 \ldf@finish{nil}
2392 ⟨/nil⟩
```

13   Support for Plain TEX

13.1   Not renaming `hyphen.tex`

As Don Knuth has declared that the filename `hyphen.tex` may only be used to designate *his* version of the american English hyphenation patterns, a new solution has to be found in order to be able to load hyphenation patterns for other languages in a plain-based TEX-format. When asked he responded:

> That file name is "sacred", and if anybody changes it they will cause severe upward/downward compatibility headaches.

> People can have a file localhyphen.tex or whatever they like, but they mustn't diddle with hyphen.tex (or plain.tex except to preload additional fonts).

107

The files `bplain.tex` and `blplain.tex` can be used as replacement wrappers around `plain.tex` and `lplain.tex` to acheive the desired effect, based on the babel package. If you load each of them with iniTeX, you will get a file called either `bplain.fmt` or `blplain.fmt`, which you can use as replacements for `plain.fmt` and `lplain.fmt`.

As these files are going to be read as the first thing iniTeX sees, we need to set some category codes just to be able to change the definition of `\input`

```
2393 ⟨*bplain | blplain⟩
2394 \catcode'\{=1 % left brace is begin-group character
2395 \catcode'\}=2 % right brace is end-group character
2396 \catcode'\#=6 % hash mark is macro parameter character
```

Now let's see if a file called `hyphen.cfg` can be found somewhere on TeX's input path by trying to open it for reading...

```
2397 \openin 0 hyphen.cfg
```

If the file wasn't found the following test turns out true.

```
2398 \ifeof0
2399 \else
```

When `hyphen.cfg` could be opened we make sure that *it* will be read instead of the file `hyphen.tex` which should (according to Don Knuth's ruling) contain the american English hyphenation patterns and nothing else.

We do this by first saving the original meaning of `\input` (and I use a one letter control sequence for that so as not to waste multi-letter control sequence on this in the format).

```
2400   \let\a\input
```

Then `\input` is defined to forget about its argument and load `hyphen.cfg` instead.

```
2401   \def\input #1 {%
2402     \let\input\a
2403     \a hyphen.cfg
```

Once that's done the original meaning of `\input` can be restored and the definition of `\a` can be forgotten.

```
2404     \let\a\undefined
2405   }
2406 \fi
2407 ⟨/bplain | blplain⟩
```

Now that we have made sure that `hyphen.cfg` will be loaded at the right moment it is time to load `plain.tex`.

```
2408 ⟨bplain⟩\a plain.tex
2409 ⟨blplain⟩\a lplain.tex
```

Finally we change the contents of `\fmtname` to indicate that this is *not* the plain format, but a format based on plain with the babel package preloaded.

```
2410 ⟨bplain⟩\def\fmtname{babel-plain}
2411 ⟨blplain⟩\def\fmtname{babel-lplain}
```

When you are using a different format, based on plain.tex you can make a copy of blplain.tex, rename it and replace `plain.tex` with the name of your format file.

13.2   Emulating some LaTeX features

The following code duplicates or emulates parts of LaTeX 2ε that are needed for babel.

We need to define \loadlocalcfg for plain users as the LATEX definition uses
\InputIfFileExists. We have to execute \@endofldf in this case.

```
2412 ⟨∗plain⟩
2413 \def\@empty{}
2414 \def\loadlocalcfg#1{%
2415   \openin0#1.cfg
2416   \ifeof0
2417     \closein0
2418   \else
2419     \closein0
2420     {\immediate\write16{***********************************}%
2421      \immediate\write16{* Local config file #1.cfg used}%
2422      \immediate\write16{*}%
2423       }
2424     \input #1.cfg\relax
2425   \fi
2426   \@endofldf}
```

13.3 General tools

A number of LATEX macro's that are needed later on.

```
2427 \long\def\@firstofone#1{#1}
2428 \long\def\@firstoftwo#1#2{#1}
2429 \long\def\@secondoftwo#1#2{#2}
2430 \def\@nnil{\@nil}
2431 \def\@gobbletwo#1#2{}
2432 \def\@ifstar#1{\@ifnextchar *{\@firstoftwo{#1}}}
2433 \def\@star@or@long#1{%
2434   \@ifstar
2435   {\let\l@ngrel@x\relax#1}%
2436   {\let\l@ngrel@x\long#1}}
2437 \let\l@ngrel@x\relax
2438 \def\@car#1#2\@nil{#1}
2439 \def\@cdr#1#2\@nil{#2}
2440 \let\@typeset@protect\relax
2441 \let\protected@edef\edef
2442 \long\def\@gobble#1{}
2443 \edef\@backslashchar{\expandafter\@gobble\string\\}
2444 \def\strip@prefix#1>{}
2445 \def\g@addto@macro#1#2{{%
2446     \toks@\expandafter{#1#2}%
2447     \xdef#1{\the\toks@}}}
2448 \def\@namedef#1{\expandafter\def\csname #1\endcsname}
2449 \def\@nameuse#1{\csname #1\endcsname}
2450 \def\@ifundefined#1{%
2451   \expandafter\ifx\csname#1\endcsname\relax
2452     \expandafter\@firstoftwo
2453   \else
2454     \expandafter\@secondoftwo
2455   \fi}
2456 \def\@expandtwoargs#1#2#3{%
2457   \edef\reserved@a{\noexpand#1{#2}{#3}}\reserved@a}
2458 \def\zap@space#1 #2{%
2459   #1%
2460   \ifx#2\@empty\else\expandafter\zap@space\fi
```

```
2461    #2}
```

LaTeX 2$_\varepsilon$ has the command `\@onlypreamble` which adds commands to a list of commands that are no longer needed after `\begin{document}`.

```
2462 \ifx\@preamblecmds\@undefined
2463   \def\@preamblecmds{}
2464 \fi
2465 \def\@onlypreamble#1{%
2466   \expandafter\gdef\expandafter\@preamblecmds\expandafter{%
2467     \@preamblecmds\do#1}}
2468 \@onlypreamble\@onlypreamble
```

Mimick LaTeX's `\AtBeginDocument`; for this to work the user needs to add `\begindocument` to his file.

```
2469 \def\begindocument{%
2470   \@begindocumenthook
2471   \global\let\@begindocumenthook\@undefined
2472   \def\do##1{\global\let##1\@undefined}%
2473   \@preamblecmds
2474   \global\let\do\noexpand}

2475 \ifx\@begindocumenthook\@undefined
2476   \def\@begindocumenthook{}
2477 \fi
2478 \@onlypreamble\@begindocumenthook
2479 \def\AtBeginDocument{\g@addto@macro\@begindocumenthook}
```

We also have to mimick LaTeX's `\AtEndOfPackage`. Our replacement macro is much simpler; it stores its argument in `\@endofldf`.

```
2480 \def\AtEndOfPackage#1{\g@addto@macro\@endofldf{#1}}
2481 \@onlypreamble\AtEndOfPackage
2482 \def\@endofldf{}
2483 \@onlypreamble\@endofldf
2484 \let\bbl@afterlang\@empty
2485 \chardef\bbl@hymapopt\z@
```

LaTeX needs to be able to switch off writing to its auxiliary files; plain doesn't have them by default.

```
2486 \ifx\if@filesw\@undefined
2487   \expandafter\let\csname if@filesw\expandafter\endcsname
2488     \csname iffalse\endcsname
2489 \fi
```

Mimick LaTeX's commands to define control sequences.

```
2490 \def\newcommand{\@star@or@long\new@command}
2491 \def\new@command#1{%
2492   \@testopt{\@newcommand#1}0}
2493 \def\@newcommand#1[#2]{%
2494   \@ifnextchar [{\@xargdef#1[#2]}%
2495                {\@argdef#1[#2]}}
2496 \long\def\@argdef#1[#2]#3{%
2497   \@yargdef#1\@ne{#2}{#3}}
2498 \long\def\@xargdef#1[#2][#3]#4{%
2499   \expandafter\def\expandafter#1\expandafter{%
2500     \expandafter\@protected@testopt\expandafter #1%
2501     \csname\string#1\expandafter\endcsname{#3}}%
2502   \expandafter\@yargdef \csname\string#1\endcsname
2503   \tw@{#2}{#4}}
```

```
2504 \long\def\@yargdef#1#2#3{%
2505   \@tempcnta#3\relax
2506   \advance \@tempcnta \@ne
2507   \let\@hash@\relax
2508   \edef\reserved@a{\ifx#2\tw@ [\@hash@1]\fi}%
2509   \@tempcntb #2%
2510   \@whilenum\@tempcntb <\@tempcnta
2511   \do{%
2512     \edef\reserved@a{\reserved@a\@hash@\the\@tempcntb}%
2513     \advance\@tempcntb \@ne}%
2514   \let\@hash@##%
2515   \l@ngrel@x\expandafter\def\expandafter#1\reserved@a}
2516 \def\providecommand{\@star@or@long\provide@command}
2517 \def\provide@command#1{%
2518   \begingroup
2519     \escapechar\m@ne\xdef\@gtempa{{\string#1}}%
2520   \endgroup
2521   \expandafter\@ifundefined\@gtempa
2522     {\def\reserved@a{\new@command#1}}%
2523     {\let\reserved@a\relax
2524      \def\reserved@a{\new@command\reserved@a}}%
2525   \reserved@a}%
2526 \def\DeclareRobustCommand{\@star@or@long\declare@robustcommand}
2527 \def\declare@robustcommand#1{%
2528   \edef\reserved@a{\string#1}%
2529   \def\reserved@b{#1}%
2530   \edef\reserved@b{\expandafter\strip@prefix\meaning\reserved@b}%
2531   \edef#1{%
2532     \ifx\reserved@a\reserved@b
2533       \noexpand\x@protect
2534       \noexpand#1%
2535     \fi
2536     \noexpand\protect
2537     \expandafter\noexpand\csname
2538       \expandafter\@gobble\string#1 \endcsname
2539   }%
2540   \expandafter\new@command\csname
2541     \expandafter\@gobble\string#1 \endcsname
2542 }
2543 \def\x@protect#1{%
2544   \ifx\protect\@typeset@protect\else
2545     \@x@protect#1%
2546   \fi
2547 }
2548 \def\@x@protect#1\fi#2#3{%
2549   \fi\protect#1%
2550 }
```

The following little macro \in@ is taken from latex.ltx; it checks whether its first argument is part of its second argument. It uses the boolean \in@; allocating a new boolean inside conditionally executed code is not possible, hence the construct with the temporary definition of \bbl@tempa.

```
2551 \def\bbl@tempa{\csname newif\endcsname\ifin@}
2552 \ifx\in@\@undefined
2553   \def\in@#1#2{%
2554     \def\in@@##1#1##2##3\in@@{%
```

```
2555        \ifx\in@##2\in@false\else\in@true\fi}%
2556      \in@@#2#1\in@\in@@}
2557 \else
2558    \let\bbl@tempa\@empty
2559 \fi
2560 \bbl@tempa
```

LATEX has a macro to check whether a certain package was loaded with specific options. The command has two extra arguments which are code to be executed in either the true or false case. This is used to detect whether the document needs one of the accents to be activated (activegrave and activeacute). For plain TEX we assume that the user wants them to be active by default. Therefore the only thing we do is execute the third argument (the code for the true case).

```
2561 \def\@ifpackagewith#1#2#3#4{#3}
```

The LATEX macro \@ifl@aded checks whether a file was loaded. This functionality is not needed for plain TEX but we need the macro to be defined as a no-op.

```
2562 \def\@ifl@aded#1#2#3#4{}
```

For the following code we need to make sure that the commands \newcommand and \providecommand exist with some sensible definition. They are not fully equivalent to their LATEX 2ε versions; just enough to make things work in plain TEXenvironments.

```
2563 \ifx\@tempcnta\@undefined
2564    \csname newcount\endcsname\@tempcnta\relax
2565 \fi
2566 \ifx\@tempcntb\@undefined
2567    \csname newcount\endcsname\@tempcntb\relax
2568 \fi
```

To prevent wasting two counters in LATEX 2.09 (because counters with the same name are allocated later by it) we reset the counter that holds the next free counter (\count10).

```
2569 \ifx\bye\@undefined
2570    \advance\count10 by -2\relax
2571 \fi
2572 \ifx\@ifnextchar\@undefined
2573    \def\@ifnextchar#1#2#3{%
2574      \let\reserved@d=#1%
2575      \def\reserved@a{#2}\def\reserved@b{#3}%
2576      \futurelet\@let@token\@ifnch}
2577    \def\@ifnch{%
2578      \ifx\@let@token\@sptoken
2579        \let\reserved@c\@xifnch
2580      \else
2581        \ifx\@let@token\reserved@d
2582          \let\reserved@c\reserved@a
2583        \else
2584          \let\reserved@c\reserved@b
2585        \fi
2586      \fi
2587      \reserved@c}
2588    \def\:{\let\@sptoken= } \:  % this makes \@sptoken a space token
2589    \def\:{\@xifnch} \expandafter\def\: {\futurelet\@let@token\@ifnch}
2590 \fi
2591 \def\@testopt#1#2{%
```

```
2592    \@ifnextchar[{#1}{#1[#2]}}
2593 \def\@protected@testopt#1{%
2594    \ifx\protect\@typeset@protect
2595      \expandafter\@testopt
2596    \else
2597      \@x@protect#1%
2598    \fi}
2599 \long\def\@whilenum#1\do #2{\ifnum #1\relax #2\relax\@iwhilenum{#1\relax
2600        #2\relax}\fi}
2601 \long\def\@iwhilenum#1{\ifnum #1\expandafter\@iwhilenum
2602        \else\expandafter\@gobble\fi{#1}}
```

13.4 Encoding related macros

Code from `ltoutenc.dtx`, adapted for use in the plain TeX environment.

```
2603 \def\DeclareTextCommand{%
2604    \@dec@text@cmd\providecommand
2605 }
2606 \def\ProvideTextCommand{%
2607    \@dec@text@cmd\providecommand
2608 }
2609 \def\DeclareTextSymbol#1#2#3{%
2610    \@dec@text@cmd\chardef#1{#2}#3\relax
2611 }
2612 \def\@dec@text@cmd#1#2#3{%
2613    \expandafter\def\expandafter#2%
2614        \expandafter{%
2615          \csname#3-cmd\expandafter\endcsname
2616          \expandafter#2%
2617          \csname#3\string#2\endcsname
2618        }%
2619 %    \let\@ifdefinable\@rc@ifdefinable
2620    \expandafter#1\csname#3\string#2\endcsname
2621 }
2622 \def\@current@cmd#1{%
2623    \ifx\protect\@typeset@protect\else
2624        \noexpand#1\expandafter\@gobble
2625    \fi
2626 }
2627 \def\@changed@cmd#1#2{%
2628    \ifx\protect\@typeset@protect
2629        \expandafter\ifx\csname\cf@encoding\string#1\endcsname\relax
2630          \expandafter\ifx\csname ?\string#1\endcsname\relax
2631            \expandafter\def\csname ?\string#1\endcsname{%
2632                \@changed@x@err{#1}%
2633            }%
2634          \fi
2635          \global\expandafter\let
2636            \csname\cf@encoding \string#1\expandafter\endcsname
2637            \csname ?\string#1\endcsname
2638        \fi
2639        \csname\cf@encoding\string#1%
2640          \expandafter\endcsname
2641    \else
2642        \noexpand#1%
```

```
2643        \fi
2644 }
2645 \def\@changed@x@err#1{%
2646      \errhelp{Your command will be ignored, type <return> to proceed}%
2647      \errmessage{Command \protect#1 undefined in encoding \cf@encoding}}
2648 \def\DeclareTextCommandDefault#1{%
2649      \DeclareTextCommand#1?%
2650 }
2651 \def\ProvideTextCommandDefault#1{%
2652      \ProvideTextCommand#1?%
2653 }
2654 \expandafter\let\csname OT1-cmd\endcsname\@current@cmd
2655 \expandafter\let\csname?-cmd\endcsname\@changed@cmd
2656 \def\DeclareTextAccent#1#2#3{%
2657    \DeclareTextCommand#1{#2}[1]{\accent#3 ##1}
2658 }
2659 \def\DeclareTextCompositeCommand#1#2#3#4{%
2660      \expandafter\let\expandafter\reserved@a\csname#2\string#1\endcsname
2661      \edef\reserved@b{\string##1}%
2662      \edef\reserved@c{%
2663        \expandafter\@strip@args\meaning\reserved@a:-\@strip@args}%
2664      \ifx\reserved@b\reserved@c
2665        \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\ifx
2666          \expandafter\@car\reserved@a\relax\relax\@nil
2667          \@text@composite
2668        \else
2669          \edef\reserved@b##1{%
2670            \def\expandafter\noexpand
2671                \csname#2\string#1\endcsname####1{%
2672                \noexpand\@text@composite
2673                  \expandafter\noexpand\csname#2\string#1\endcsname
2674                  ####1\noexpand\@empty\noexpand\@text@composite
2675                  {##1}%
2676            }%
2677          }%
2678          \expandafter\reserved@b\expandafter{\reserved@a{##1}}%
2679        \fi
2680        \expandafter\def\csname\expandafter\string\csname
2681          #2\endcsname\string#1-\string#3\endcsname{#4}
2682      \else
2683        \errhelp{Your command will be ignored, type <return> to proceed}%
2684        \errmessage{\string\DeclareTextCompositeCommand\space used on
2685          inappropriate command \protect#1}
2686      \fi
2687 }
2688 \def\@text@composite#1#2#3\@text@composite{%
2689      \expandafter\@text@composite@x
2690        \csname\string#1-\string#2\endcsname
2691 }
2692 \def\@text@composite@x#1#2{%
2693      \ifx#1\relax
2694          #2%
2695      \else
2696          #1%
2697      \fi
2698 }
```

114

```
2699 %
2700 \def\@strip@args#1:#2-#3\@strip@args{#2}
2701 \def\DeclareTextComposite#1#2#3#4{%
2702     \def\reserved@a{\DeclareTextCompositeCommand#1{#2}{#3}}%
2703     \bgroup
2704         \lccode'\@=#4%
2705         \lowercase{%
2706     \egroup
2707         \reserved@a @%
2708     }%
2709 }
2710 %
2711 \def\UseTextSymbol#1#2{%
2712 %    \let\@curr@enc\cf@encoding
2713 %    \@use@text@encoding{#1}%
2714     #2%
2715 %    \@use@text@encoding\@curr@enc
2716 }
2717 \def\UseTextAccent#1#2#3{%
2718 %    \let\@curr@enc\cf@encoding
2719 %    \@use@text@encoding{#1}%
2720 %    #2{\@use@text@encoding\@curr@enc\selectfont#3}%
2721 %    \@use@text@encoding\@curr@enc
2722 }
2723 \def\@use@text@encoding#1{%
2724 %    \edef\f@encoding{#1}%
2725 %    \xdef\font@name{%
2726 %        \csname\curr@fontshape/\f@size\endcsname
2727 %    }%
2728 %    \pickup@font
2729 %    \font@name
2730 %    \@@enc@update
2731 }
2732 \def\DeclareTextSymbolDefault#1#2{%
2733     \DeclareTextCommandDefault#1{\UseTextSymbol{#2}#1}%
2734 }
2735 \def\DeclareTextAccentDefault#1#2{%
2736     \DeclareTextCommandDefault#1{\UseTextAccent{#2}#1}%
2737 }
2738 \def\cf@encoding{OT1}
```

Currently we only use the LaTeX 2ε method for accents for those that are known to be made active in *some* language definition file.

```
2739 \DeclareTextAccent{\"}{OT1}{127}
2740 \DeclareTextAccent{\'}{OT1}{19}
2741 \DeclareTextAccent{\^}{OT1}{94}
2742 \DeclareTextAccent{\`}{OT1}{18}
2743 \DeclareTextAccent{\~}{OT1}{126}
```

The following control sequences are used in babel.def but are not defined for plain TeX.

```
2744 \DeclareTextSymbol{\textquotedblleft}{OT1}{92}
2745 \DeclareTextSymbol{\textquotedblright}{OT1}{'\"}
2746 \DeclareTextSymbol{\textquoteleft}{OT1}{'\`}
2747 \DeclareTextSymbol{\textquoteright}{OT1}{'\'}
2748 \DeclareTextSymbol{\i}{OT1}{16}
2749 \DeclareTextSymbol{\ss}{OT1}{25}
```

For a couple of languages we need the LATEX-control sequence `\scriptsize` to be available. Because plain TEX doesn't have such a sofisticated font mechanism as LATEX has, we just `\let` it to `\sevenrm`.

```
2750 \ifx\scriptsize\@undefined
2751   \let\scriptsize\sevenrm
2752 \fi
```

13.5 Babel options

The file `babel.def` expects some definitions made in the LATEX style file. So we must provide them at least some predefined values as well some tools to set them (even if not all options are available). There in no package options, and therefore and alternative mechanism is provided. For the moment, only `\babeloptionstrings` and `\babeloptionmath` are provided, which can be defined before loading babel. `\BabelModifiers` can be set too (but not sure it works).

```
2753 \let\bbl@opt@shorthands\@nnil
2754 \def\bbl@ifshorthand#1#2#3{#2}%
2755 \ifx\babeloptionstrings\@undefined
2756   \let\bbl@opt@strings\@nnil
2757 \else
2758   \let\bbl@opt@strings\babeloptionstrings
2759 \fi
2760 \def\bbl@tempa{normal}
2761 \ifx\babeloptionmath\bbl@tempa
2762   \def\bbl@mathnormal{\noexpand\textormath}
2763 \fi
2764 \def\BabelStringsDefault{generic}
2765 \ifx\BabelModifiers\@undefined\let\BabelModifiers\relax\fi
2766 \let\bbl@afterlang\relax
2767 \let\bbl@language@opts\@empty
2768 \ifx\@uclclist\@undefined\let\@uclclist\@empty\fi
2769 \def\AfterBabelLanguage#1#2{}
2770 ⟨/plain⟩
```

14 Tentative font handling

A general solution is far from trivial:

- `\addfontfeature` only sets it for the current family and it's not very efficient, and

- `\defaultfontfeatures` requires to redefine the font (and the options aren't "orthogonal").

```
2771 ⟨⟨∗Font selection⟩⟩ ≡
2772 \def\babelFSstore#1{%
2773   \bbl@for\bbl@tempa{#1}{%
2774     \edef\bbl@tempb{\noexpand\bbl@FSstore{\bbl@tempa}}
2775     \bbl@tempb{rm}\rmdefault\bbl@save@rmdefault
2776     \bbl@tempb{sf}\sfdefault\bbl@save@sfdefault
2777     \bbl@tempb{tt}\ttdefault\bbl@save@ttdefault}}
2778 \def\bbl@FSstore#1#2#3#4{%
2779   \bbl@csarg\edef{#2default#1}{#3}%
2780   \expandafter\addto\csname extras#1\endcsname{%
```

```
2781    \let#4#3%
2782    \ifx#3\f@family
2783      \edef#3{\csname bbl@#2default#1\endcsname}%
2784      \fontfamily{#3}\selectfont
2785    \else
2786      \edef#3{\csname bbl@#2default#1\endcsname}%
2787    \fi}%
2788  \expandafter\addto\csname noextras#1\endcsname{%
2789    \ifx#3\f@family
2790      \fontfamily{#4}\selectfont
2791    \fi
2792    \let#3#4}}
2793 \let\bbl@langfeatures\@empty
2794 \def\babelFSfeatures{%
2795   \let\bbl@ori@fontspec\fontspec
2796   \renewcommand\fontspec[1][]{%
2797     \bbl@ori@fontspec[\bbl@langfeatures##1]}
2798   \let\babelFSfeatures\bbl@FSfeatures
2799   \babelFSfeatures}
2800 \def\bbl@FSfeatures#1#2{%
2801   \expandafter\addto\csname extras#1\endcsname{%
2802     \babel@save\bbl@langfeatures
2803     \edef\bbl@langfeatures{#2,}}}
2804 ⟨⟨/Font selection⟩⟩
```

15 Hooks for XeTeX and LuaTeX

15.1 XeTeX

Unfortunately, the current encoding cannot be retrieved and therefore it is reset always to utf8, which seems a sensible default.

LaTeX sets many "codes" just before loading hyphen.cfg. That is not a problem in luatex, but in xetex they must be reset to the proper value. Most of the work is done in xe(la)tex.ini, so here we just "undo" some of the changes done by LaTeX. Anyway, for consistency LuaTeX also resets the catcodes.

```
2805 ⟨⟨∗Restore Unicode catcodes before loading patterns⟩⟩ ≡
2806   \begingroup
2807       % Reset chars "80-"C0 to category "other", no case mapping:
2808     \catcode`\@=11 \count@=128
2809     \loop\ifnum\count@<192
2810       \global\uccode\count@=0 \global\lccode\count@=0
2811       \global\catcode\count@=12 \global\sfcode\count@=1000
2812       \advance\count@ by 1 \repeat
2813       % Other:
2814     \def\O ##1 {%
2815       \global\uccode"##1=0 \global\lccode"##1=0
2816       \global\catcode"##1=12 \global\sfcode"##1=1000 }%
2817       % Letter:
2818     \def\L ##1 ##2 ##3 {\global\catcode"##1=11
2819       \global\uccode"##1="##2
2820       \global\lccode"##1="##3
2821       % Uppercase letters have sfcode=999:
2822       \ifnum"##1="##3 \else \global\sfcode"##1=999 \fi }%
2823       % Letter without case mappings:
```

```
2824    \def\l ##1 {\L ##1 ##1 ##1 }%
2825    \l 00AA
2826    \L 00B5 039C 00B5
2827    \l 00BA
2828    \O 00D7
2829    \l 00DF
2830    \O 00F7
2831    \L 00FF 0178 00FF
2832  \endgroup
2833  \input #1\relax
```
2834 ⟨⟨/Restore Unicode catcodes before loading patterns⟩⟩

Now, the code.

2835 ⟨∗xetex⟩
```
2836 \def\BabelStringsDefault{unicode}
2837 \let\xebbl@stop\relax
2838 \AddBabelHook{xetex}{encodedcommands}{%
2839   \def\bbl@tempa{#1}%
2840   \ifx\bbl@tempa\@empty
2841     \XeTeXinputencoding"bytes"%
2842   \else
2843     \XeTeXinputencoding"#1"%
2844   \fi
2845   \def\xebbl@stop{\XeTeXinputencoding"utf8"}}
2846 \AddBabelHook{xetex}{stopcommands}{%
2847   \xebbl@stop
2848   \let\xebbl@stop\relax}
2849 \AddBabelHook{xetex}{loadkernel}{%
```
2850 ⟨⟨Restore Unicode catcodes before loading patterns⟩⟩}
2851 ⟨⟨Font selection⟩⟩
2852 ⟨/xetex⟩

15.2   LuaTeX

The new loader for luatex is based solely on `language.dat`, which is read on the fly. The code shouldn't be executed when the format is build, so we check if `\AddBabelHook` is defined. Then comes a modified version of the loader in `hyphen.cfg` (without the hyphenmins stuff, which is under the direct control of babel).

The names `\l@<language>` are defined and take some value from the beginning because all `ldf` files assume this for the corresponding language to be considered valid, but patterns are not loaded (except the first one). This is done later, when the language is first selected (which usually means when the `ldf` finishes). If a language has been loaded, `\bbl@hyphendata@<num>` exists (with the names of the files read).

The default setup preloads the first language into the format. This is intended mainly for 'english', so that it's available without further intervention from the user. To avoid duplicating it, the following rule applies: if the "0th" language and the first language in `language.dat` have the same name then just ignore the latter. If there are new synonymous, the are added, but note if the language patterns have not been preloaded they won't at run time.

Other preloaded languages could be read twice, if they has been preloaded into the format. This is not optimal, but it shouldn't happen very often – with luatex patterns are best loaded when the document is typeset, and the "0th" language is

preloaded just for backwards compatibility.

As of 1.1b, lua(e)tex is taken into account. Formerly, loading of patterns on the fly didn't work in this format, but with the new loader it does. Unfortunately, the format is not based on babel, and data could be duplicated, because languages are reassigned above those in the format (nothing serious, anyway). Note even with this format `language.dat` is used (under the principle of a single source), instead of `language.def`.

Of course, there is room for improvements, like tools to read and reassign languages, which would require modifying the language list, and better error handling.

We need catcode tables, but no format (targeted by babel) provide a command to allocate them (although there are packages like ctablestack). For the moment, a dangerous approach is used – just allocate a high random number and cross the fingers. To complicate things, etex.sty changes the way languages are allocated.

```
2853 ⟨*luatex⟩
2854 \ifx\AddBabelHook\@undefined
2855 \begingroup
2856   \toks@{}
2857   \count@\z@ % 0=start, 1=0th, 2=normal
2858   \def\bbl@process@line#1#2 #3 #4 {%
2859     \ifx=#1%
2860       \bbl@process@synonym{#2}%
2861     \else
2862       \bbl@process@language{#1#2}{#3}{#4}%
2863     \fi
2864     \ignorespaces}
2865   \def\bbl@manylang{%
2866     \ifnum\bbl@last>\@ne
2867       \bbl@info{Non-standard hyphenation setup}%
2868     \fi
2869     \let\bbl@manylang\relax}
2870   \def\bbl@process@language#1#2#3{%
2871     \ifcase\count@
2872       \@ifundefined{zth@#1}{\count@\tw@}{\count@\@ne}%
2873     \or
2874       \count@\tw@
2875     \fi
2876     \ifnum\count@=\tw@
2877       \expandafter\addlanguage\csname l@#1\endcsname
2878       \language\allocationnumber
2879       \chardef\bbl@last\allocationnumber
2880       \bbl@manylang
2881       \let\bbl@elt\relax
2882       \xdef\bbl@languages{%
2883         \bbl@languages\bbl@elt{#1}{\the\language}{#2}{#3}}%
2884     \fi
2885     \the\toks@
2886     \toks@{}}
2887   \def\bbl@process@synonym@aux#1#2{%
2888     \global\expandafter\chardef\csname l@#1\endcsname#2\relax
2889     \let\bbl@elt\relax
2890     \xdef\bbl@languages{%
2891       \bbl@languages\bbl@elt{#1}{#2}{}{}}}%
2892   \def\bbl@process@synonym#1{%
```

```
2893    \ifcase\count@
2894      \toks@\expandafter{\the\toks@\relax\bbl@process@synonym{#1}}%
2895    \or
2896      \@ifundefined{zth@#1}{\bbl@process@synonym@aux{#1}{0}}{}%
2897    \else
2898      \bbl@process@synonym@aux{#1}{\the\bbl@last}%
2899    \fi}
2900  \ifx\bbl@languages\@undefined % Just a (sensible?) guess
2901    \chardef\l@english\z@
2902    \chardef\l@USenglish\z@
2903    \chardef\bbl@last\z@
2904    \global\@namedef{bbl@hyphendata@0}{{hyphen.tex}{}}
2905    \gdef\bbl@languages{%
2906      \bbl@elt{english}{0}{hyphen.tex}{}%
2907      \bbl@elt{USenglish}{0}{}{}}
2908  \else
2909    \global\let\bbl@languages@format\bbl@languages
2910    \def\bbl@elt#1#2#3#4{% Remove all except language 0
2911      \ifnum#2>\z@\else
2912        \noexpand\bbl@elt{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}%
2913      \fi}%
2914    \xdef\bbl@languages{\bbl@languages}%
2915  \fi
2916  \def\bbl@elt#1#2#3#4{\@namedef{zth@#1}{}} % Define flags
2917  \bbl@languages
2918  \openin1=language.dat
2919  \ifeof1
2920    \bbl@warning{I couldn't find language.dat. No additional\\%
2921                 patterns loaded. Reported}%
2922  \else
2923    \loop
2924      \endlinechar\m@ne
2925      \read1 to \bbl@line
2926      \endlinechar'\^^M
2927      \if T\ifeof1F\fi T\relax
2928        \ifx\bbl@line\@empty\else
2929          \edef\bbl@line{\bbl@line\space\space\space}%
2930          \expandafter\bbl@process@line\bbl@line\relax
2931        \fi
2932    \repeat
2933  \fi
2934 \endgroup
2935 \def\bbl@get@enc#1:#2:#3\@@@{\def\bbl@hyph@enc{#2}}
2936 \ifx\babelcatcodetablenum\@undefined
2937   \def\babelcatcodetablenum{5211}
2938 \fi
2939 \def\bbl@luapatterns#1#2{%
2940   \bbl@get@enc#1::\@@@
2941   \setbox\z@\hbox\bgroup
2942     \begingroup
2943       \ifx\catcodetable\@undefined
2944         \let\savecatcodetable\luatexsavecatcodetable
2945         \let\initcatcodetable\luatexinitcatcodetable
2946         \let\catcodetable\luatexcatcodetable
2947       \fi
2948       \savecatcodetable\babelcatcodetablenum\relax
```

```
2949        \initcatcodetable\numexpr\babelcatcodetablenum+1\relax
2950        \catcodetable\numexpr\babelcatcodetablenum+1\relax
2951        \catcode'\#=6  \catcode'\$=3 \catcode'\&=4 \catcode'\^=7
2952        \catcode'\_=8  \catcode'\{=1 \catcode'\}=2 \catcode'\~=13
2953        \catcode'\@=11 \catcode'\^^I=10 \catcode'\^^J=12
2954        \catcode'\<=12 \catcode'\>=12 \catcode'\*=12 \catcode'\.=12
2955        \catcode'\-=12 \catcode'\/=12 \catcode'\[=12 \catcode'\]=12
2956        \catcode'\'=12 \catcode'\'=12 \catcode'\"=12
2957        \input #1\relax
2958        \catcodetable\babelcatcodetablenum\relax
2959      \endgroup
2960      \def\bbl@tempa{#2}%
2961      \ifx\bbl@tempa\@empty\else
2962        \input #2\relax
2963      \fi
2964   \egroup}%
2965 \def\bbl@patterns@lua#1{%
2966   \language=\expandafter\ifx\csname l@#1:\f@encoding\endcsname\relax
2967      \csname l@#1\endcsname
2968      \edef\bbl@tempa{#1}%
2969   \else
2970      \csname l@#1:\f@encoding\endcsname
2971      \edef\bbl@tempa{#1:\f@encoding}%
2972   \fi\relax
2973   \@namedef{lu@texhyphen@loaded@\the\language}{}% Temp
2974   \@ifundefined{bbl@hyphendata@\the\language}%
2975      {\def\bbl@elt##1##2##3##4{%
2976         \ifnum##2=\csname l@\bbl@tempa\endcsname % #2=spanish, dutch:OT1...
2977           \def\bbl@tempb{##3}%
2978           \ifx\bbl@tempb\@empty\else % if not a synonymous
2979             \def\bbl@tempc{{##3}{##4}}%
2980           \fi
2981           \bbl@csarg\xdef{hyphendata@##2}{\bbl@tempc}%
2982         \fi}%
2983      \bbl@languages
2984      \@ifundefined{bbl@hyphendata@\the\language}%
2985        {\bbl@info{No hyphenation patterns were set for\\%
2986                  language âĂŸ\bbl@tempaâĂŹ. Reported}}%
2987        {\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\bbl@luapatterns
2988          \csname bbl@hyphendata@\the\language\endcsname}}{}}
2989 \endinput\fi
2990 \begingroup
2991 \catcode'\%=12
2992 \catcode'\'=12
2993 \catcode'\"=12
2994 \catcode'\:=12
2995 \directlua{
2996   Babel = {}
2997   function Babel.bytes(line)
2998     return line:gsub("(.)",
2999       function (chr) return unicode.utf8.char(string.byte(chr)) end)
3000   end
3001   function Babel.begin_process_input()
3002     if luatexbase and luatexbase.add_to_callback then
3003       luatexbase.add_to_callback('process_input_buffer',
3004                                   Babel.bytes,'Babel.bytes')
```

```
3005      else
3006        Babel.callback = callback.find('process_input_buffer')
3007        callback.register('process_input_buffer',Babel.bytes)
3008      end
3009    end
3010    function Babel.end_process_input ()
3011      if luatexbase and luatexbase.remove_from_callback then
3012        luatexbase.remove_from_callback('process_input_buffer','Babel.bytes')
3013      else
3014        callback.register('process_input_buffer',Babel.callback)
3015      end
3016    end
3017    function Babel.addpatterns(pp, lg)
3018      local lg = lang.new(lg)
3019      local pats = lang.patterns(lg) or ''
3020      lang.clear_patterns(lg)
3021      for p in pp:gmatch('[^%s]+') do
3022        ss = ''
3023        for i in string.utfcharacters(p:gsub('%d', '')) do
3024          ss = ss .. '%d?' .. i
3025        end
3026        ss = ss:gsub('^%%d%?%.', '%%.') .. '%d?'
3027        ss = ss:gsub('%.%%d%?$', '%%.')
3028        pats, n = pats:gsub('%s' .. ss .. '%s', ' ' .. p .. ' ')
3029        if n == 0 then
3030          tex.sprint(
3031            [[\string\csname\space bbl@info\endcsname{New pattern: ]]
3032            .. p .. [[}]])
3033          pats = pats .. ' ' .. p
3034        else
3035          tex.sprint(
3036            [[\string\csname\space bbl@info\endcsname{Renew pattern: ]]
3037            .. p .. [[}]])
3038        end
3039      end
3040      lang.patterns(lg, pats)
3041    end
3042 }
3043 \endgroup
3044 \def\BabelStringsDefault{unicode}
3045 \let\luabbl@stop\relax
3046 \AddBabelHook{luatex}{encodedcommands}{%
3047   \def\bbl@tempa{utf8}\def\bbl@tempb{#1}%
3048   \ifx\bbl@tempa\bbl@tempb\else
3049     \directlua{Babel.begin_process_input()}%
3050     \def\luabbl@stop{%
3051       \directlua{Babel.end_process_input()}}%
3052   \fi}%
3053 \AddBabelHook{luatex}{stopcommands}{%
3054   \luabbl@stop
3055   \let\luabbl@stop\relax}
3056 \AddBabelHook{luatex}{patterns}{%
3057   \@ifundefined{bbl@hyphendata@\the\language}%
3058     {\def\bbl@elt##1##2##3##4{%
3059       \ifnum##2=\csname l@##2\endcsname % #2=spanish, dutch:OT1...
3060         \def\bbl@tempb{##3}%
```

122

```
3061          \ifx\bbl@tempb\@empty\else % if not a synonymous
3062            \def\bbl@tempc{{##3}{##4}}%
3063          \fi
3064          \bbl@csarg\xdef{hyphendata@##2}{\bbl@tempc}%
3065        \fi}%
3066      \bbl@languages
3067      \@ifundefined{bbl@hyphendata@\the\language}%
3068        {\bbl@info{No hyphenation patterns were set for\\%
3069                  language âĂŸ#2âĂŹ. Reported}}%
3070        {\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\bbl@luapatterns
3071          \csname bbl@hyphendata@\the\language\endcsname}}{}%
3072  \@ifundefined{bbl@patterns@}{}{%
3073    \begingroup
3074      \@expandtwoargs\in@{,\number\language,}{,\bbl@pttnlist}%
3075      \ifin@\else
3076        \ifx\bbl@patterns@\@empty\else
3077          \directlua{ Babel.addpatterns(
3078            [[\bbl@patterns@]], \number\language) }%
3079        \fi
3080        \@ifundefined{bbl@patterns@#1}%
3081          \@empty
3082          {\directlua{ Babel.addpatterns(
3083                [[\space\csname bbl@patterns@#1\endcsname]],
3084                \number\language) }}%
3085        \xdef\bbl@pttnlist{\bbl@pttnlist\number\language,}%
3086      \fi
3087    \endgroup}}
3088 \AddBabelHook{luatex}{everylanguage}{%
3089   \def\process@language##1##2##3{%
3090     \def\process@line####1####2 ####3 ####4 {}}}
3091 \AddBabelHook{luatex}{loadpatterns}{%
3092   \input #1\relax
3093   \expandafter\gdef\csname bbl@hyphendata@\the\language\endcsname
3094     {{#1}{}}}
3095 \AddBabelHook{luatex}{loadexceptions}{%
3096   \input #1\relax
3097   \def\bbl@tempb##1##2{{##1}{#1}}%
3098   \expandafter\xdef\csname bbl@hyphendata@\the\language\endcsname
3099     {\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\bbl@tempb
3100      \csname bbl@hyphendata@\the\language\endcsname}}
```

\babelpatterns   This macro adds patterns. Two macros are used to store them: \bbl@patterns@
for the global ones and \bbl@patterns@<lang> for language ones. We make sure
there is a space between words when multiple commands are used.

```
3101 \@onlypreamble\babelpatterns
3102 \AtEndOfPackage{%
3103   \newcommand\babelpatterns[2][\@empty]{%
3104     \ifx\bbl@patterns@\relax
3105       \let\bbl@patterns@\@empty
3106     \fi
3107     \ifx\bbl@pttnlist\@empty\else
3108       \bbl@warning{%
3109         You must not intermingle \string\selectlanguage\space and\\%
3110         \string\babelpatterns\space or some patterns will not\\%
3111         be taken into account. Reported}%
3112     \fi
```

```
3113    \ifx\@empty#1%
3114      \protected@edef\bbl@patterns@{\bbl@patterns@\space#2}%
3115    \else
3116      \edef\bbl@tempb{\zap@space#1 \@empty}%
3117      \bbl@for\bbl@tempa\bbl@tempb{%
3118        \bbl@fixname\bbl@tempa
3119        \bbl@iflanguage\bbl@tempa{%
3120          \bbl@csarg\protected@edef{patterns@\bbl@tempa}{%
3121            \@ifundefined{bbl@patterns@\bbl@tempa}%
3122              \@empty
3123              {\csname bbl@patterns@\bbl@tempa\endcsname\space}%
3124          #2}}}%
3125    \fi}}
```

Common stuff.

```
3126 \AddBabelHook{luatex}{loadkernel}{%
3127 ⟨⟨Restore Unicode catcodes before loading patterns⟩⟩}
3128 ⟨⟨Font selection⟩⟩
3129 ⟨/luatex⟩
```

16 Conclusion

A system of document options has been presented that enable the user of LaTeX to adapt the standard document classes of LaTeX to the language he or she prefers to use. These options offer the possibility of switching between languages in one document. The basic interface consists of using one option, which is the same for *all* standard document classes.

In some cases the language definition files provide macros that can be useful to plain TeX users as well as to LaTeX users. The babel system has been implemented so that it can be used by both groups of users.

17 Acknowledgements

I would like to thank all who volunteered as β-testers for their time. I would like to mention Julio Sanchez who supplied the option file for the Spanish language and Maurizio Codogno who supplied the option file for the Italian language. Michel Goossens supplied contributions for most of the other languages. Nico Poppelier helped polish the text of the documentation and supplied parts of the macros for the Dutch language. Paul Wackers and Werenfried Spit helped find and repair bugs.

During the further development of the babel system I received much help from Bernd Raichle, for which I am grateful.

References

[1] Donald E. Knuth, *The TeXbook*, Addison-Wesley, 1986.

[2] Leslie Lamport, *LaTeX, A document preparation System*, Addison-Wesley, 1986.

[3] K.F. Treebus. *Tekstwijzer, een gids voor het grafisch verwerken van tekst.* SDU Uitgeverij ('s-Gravenhage, 1988). A Dutch book on layout design and typography.

[4] Hubert Partl, *German T_EX*, *TUGboat* 9 (1988) #1, p. 70–72.

[5] Leslie Lamport, in: T_EXhax Digest, Volume 89, #13, 17 February 1989.

[6] Johannes Braams, Victor Eijkhout and Nico Poppelier, *The development of national L^AT_EX styles*, *TUGboat* 10 (1989) #3, p. 401–406.

[7] Joachim Schrod, *International L^AT_EX is ready to use*, *TUGboat* 11 (1990) #1, p. 87–90.

[8] Apostolos Syropoulos, Antonis Tsolomitis and Nick Sofroniu, *Digital typography using L^AT_EX*, Springer, 2002, p. 301–373.

[9] Yannis Haralambous, *Fonts & Encodings*, O'Reilly, 2007.